

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

**Engineer Platoon, Engineer
Company, Engineer Combat
Battalion, Corps**

SEPTEMBER 2003

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at Army
Knowledge Online (www.us.army.mil)
and the General Dennis J. Reimer
Training and Doctrine Digital Library at
www.adtdl.army.mil)**

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
for the
Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Combat
Battalion, Corps**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents	i
Preface	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation	6-1
Appendix A - Exercise Operation Order	A-1
Appendix B - Threat Analysis	B-1
Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart	C-1
Glossary	Glossary-1
References	References-1
Questionnaire	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer platoon, engineer company, engineer combat battalion, corps tables of organization and equipment (TOE) 05437L200 and 05437L300.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. **General.** This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. **Supporting Material.** This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

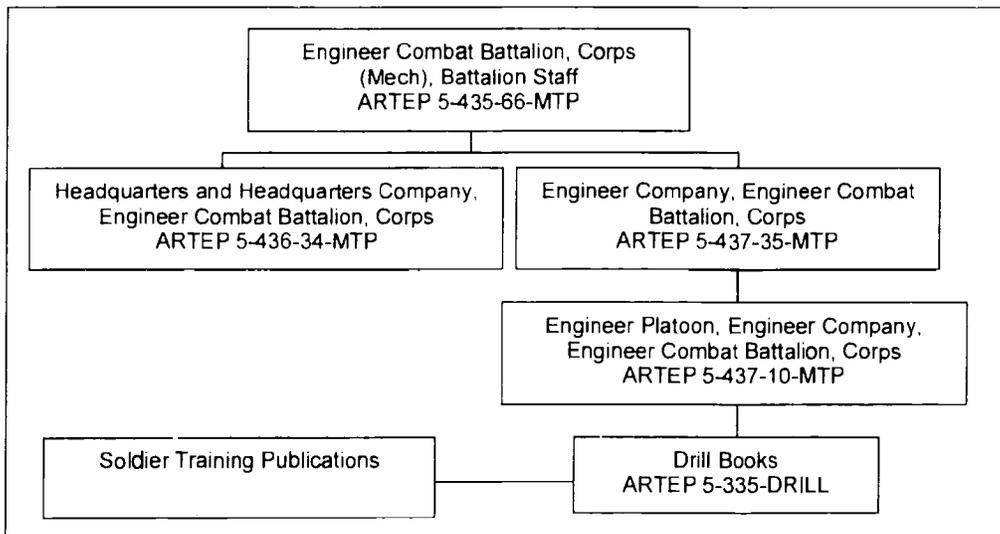


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

- a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-435-66-MTP for the engineer combat battalion, corps (mech), battalion staff. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.
- b. ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP for the headquarters and headquarters company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of the support company training program to the battalion training program.
- c. ARTEP 5-437-35-MTP for the engineer company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.
- d. ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP for the engineer platoon, engineer company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of the platoon training program to the company training program.

e. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

f. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSs) and skill levels.

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of a sample training exercise. This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) Reference. This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to assess the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) **Conditions.** This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) **Task standards.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a list of actions that the unit is to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) **Task performance/evaluation summary block.** This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) **Supporting individual tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) **Supporting collective tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each collective task are listed.

(m) **Opposing forces tasks.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy being portrayed.

(2) **Usage.** The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, contains an English-to-metric measurement conversion chart.

1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Conduct general engineering operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS), version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

- (1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.
 - (2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.
 - (3) Determine where the training can take place.
 - (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
 - (5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.
- e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.
 - f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.
 - g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. **Safety.** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. **Risk Management.** Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

- (1) Commanders.
 - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
 - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
 - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
 - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
 - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
 - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
 - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
 - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
 - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
 - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
 - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
 - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
 - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.
 - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
 - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
 - (d) Work as a team member.
 - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. **Fratricide.** Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

- (1) **Causes.** The primary causes of fratricide are—

- (a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.
- (b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.
- (c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.
- (d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.
- (e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.
- (f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.
- (g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of the unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- (a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.
- (b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.
- (c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (d) Oversupervision of units.
- (e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (g) Loss of initiative.
- (h) Disrupted operations.
- (i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

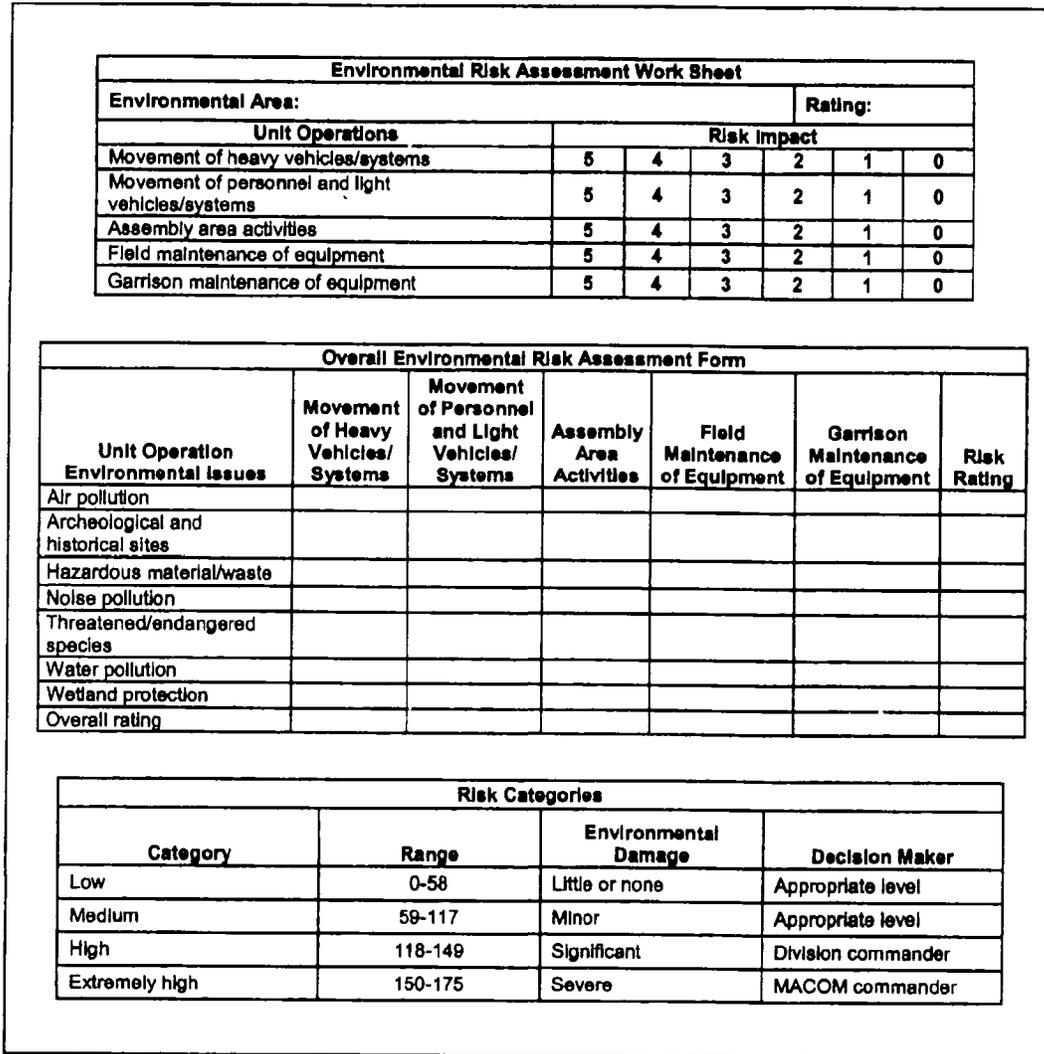


Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

Step 3. Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

Step 4. Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

Step 5. Implement Controls. Implement environmental-protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

Step 6. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table Mission Title
Provide engineer support to countermobility operations
Fight as infantry
Conduct general engineering operations
Provide engineer support to mobility operations
Perform survivability construction
Sustain unit operations
Defend the unit
Conduct unit survivability operations

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
Develop Intelligence				
05-1-1391 Request a Standard Geospatial Product	X	X	X	X
05-1-1393 Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products	X	X	X	X
05-2-0403 Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X		X	X
05-3-0404 Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X		X	X
05-3-0405 Perform a Target Reconnaissance	X			X
05-3-0412 Perform a Technical Reconnaissance	X		X	X
05-3-0413 Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance	X		X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
05-1-1200 Fight as Engineers	X			X
05-2-0908 Conduct Quartering Party Operations	X	X		X

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-2-1215 Fight as Infantry		X		
05-3-0004 Breach Obstacles				X
05-3-0201 Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives	X			
05-3-0202 Disable a Bridge With Explosives	X			X
05-3-1221 Support by Fire		X		
05-3-1224 React to a Direct-Fire/Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)	X		X	X
05-3-1226 Establish a Hasty Position		X		
05-3-7122 React to Contact		X		
05-4-0205 Create an Abatis	X			
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire		X		
07-2-1125.05-T01A Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)	X	X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X		
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X		X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A Establish Unit Defense	X	X		
07-3-1000.05-T01A Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1112.05-T01A React to an Ambush	X	X		
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March		X		
07-3-4135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Mechanized)	X	X		X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically		X		
Protect the Force				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X			
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X		X	
05-2-0514 Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles	X			
05-2-0516 Emplace Situational Obstacles	X			
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X			
05-2-1005 Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations	X			X
05-3-0043.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques				X
05-3-0044 Support an Attack on Fortified Positions				X
05-3-0046.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques				X
05-3-0047.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques				X
05-3-0110 Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield	X			
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-3-0114 Conduct Breaching Operations				X
05-3-0116 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield				X
05-3-0204 Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles	X		X	X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X			
05-3-0303 Construct Wire Obstacles	X		X	
05-3-0304 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X		X	

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch	X		X	
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle	X			
05-3-0311	Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms	X		X	X
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters				
05-3-0603	Prepare an Expedient Ford			X	X
05-3-0705	Construct Combat Roads/Trails			X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-3-2010	Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield	X			
05-3-2011	Emplace a Volcano Minefield	X			
05-4-0110.05-R01A	Mark a Minefield				X
05-4-0117	Emplace a Nuisance Minefield	X			
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions		X		
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures				
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
05-3-0619	Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge			X	X
05-3-0701	Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters				X
05-3-0707	Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges	X		X	X
05-3-0785	Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces			X	X
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations				
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply				
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)				
Exercise Command and Control				
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-1218 Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element	X			X
05-3-1018 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-3-1239 Plan and Control Indirect Fire	X	X		X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
Develop Intelligence					
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product		X	X	X
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products		X	X	X
05-2-0403	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance		X		
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X	X		X
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance				
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance	X	X		
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance	X			
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X			
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations		X	X	X
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry				
05-3-0004	Breach Obstacles				
05-3-0201	Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives				
05-3-0202	Disable a Bridge With Explosives		X	X	X
05-3-1221	Support by Fire				
05-3-1224	React to a Direct-Fire/Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)			X	
05-3-1226	Establish a Hasty Position			X	
05-3-7122	React to Contact			X	X
05-4-0205	Create an Abatis				
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire			X	X
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)			X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy		X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense		X	X	X

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
07-3-1000.05-T01A Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1112.05-T01A React to an Ambush		X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March		X	X	X
07-3-4135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Mechanized)				
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically			X	X
Protect the Force				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions			X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack			X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack			X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike			X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area			X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations			X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination		X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X	X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-2-0514 Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles				
05-2-0516 Emplace Situational Obstacles				
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack		X	X	X
05-2-1005 Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations				

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-3-0043.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques				
05-3-0044 Support an Attack on Fortified Positions				
05-3-0046.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques				
05-3-0047.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques				
05-3-0110 Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield				
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield		X	X	X
05-3-0114 Conduct Breaching Operations				
05-3-0116 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield		X	X	X
05-3-0204 Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles				
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material		X	X	X
05-3-0303 Construct Wire Obstacles	X	X	X	X
05-3-0304 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X		X	X
05-3-0305 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	X
05-3-0306 Construct a Tank Ditch				
05-3-0307 Construct a Log Obstacle			X	
05-3-0311 Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms	X		X	X
05-3-0312 Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X			X
05-3-0603 Prepare an Expedient Ford	X			
05-3-0705 Construct Combat Roads/Trails				
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-3-2010 Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield				
05-3-2011 Emplace a Volcano Minefield			X	
05-4-0110.05-R01A Mark a Minefield				
05-4-0117 Emplace a Nuisance Minefield				
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions		X	X	X

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X	X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms		X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
05-3-0619 Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge		X		X
05-3-0701 Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters				
05-3-0707 Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges				
05-3-0785 Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces	X			
05-3-1600 Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)		X	X	
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures		X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions		X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations		X	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply		X		X
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control				
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-1218 Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element				

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGARS) Frequency Hopping (F H) Net	X	X	X	X

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. **General.** The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, sample FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. **Mission Outlines.** Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline

ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING	
Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0726	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bndge Abutment
05-3-0710	Assemble and Install Culverts
05-3-0765	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-0778	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Pre-engineered Structure
05-3-0784	Construct/Repair Headwalls
05-3-0787	Construct/Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-0789	Construct/Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-0790	Construct/Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-0791	Construct/Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-0792	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-0904	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY	
Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0114	Conduct Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0609	Operate River Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION	
Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline

ENGINEER COMPANY UNIT SURVIVABILITY/UNIT DEFENSE	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. **General.** Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample STX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the STX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. STX Exercise

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
STX 5-2-E0001	Breaching Obstacles	4-1

4-2. **Situational Training Exercise.** STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training of missions.
- Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

ENGINEER PLATOON STX 5-2-E0001 BREACHING OBSTACLES

1. **Objective.** This sample STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon operation (breaching obstacles).
2. **Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX 5-2-E0001 requirement to conduct combat operations.
3. **Training.**
 - a. **Individual Training.** This training should be based on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. Use the individual-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 12B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards then providing feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes common task tests and the commander's evaluations.
 - b. **Collective Training.** This training should be based on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission (as well as other missions) are in the mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2.
 - c. **Leader Training.** This training should be based on the leader tasks required for the exercises as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or

by one or all of the following methods. When material and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed below.

- (1) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP.
- (2) A map reconnaissance assists in terrain analysis and war gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)
- (3) Terrain board or sand table exercises permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war gaming or rehearsals. (Model the terrain board or the sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)
- (4) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land-navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions.
- (5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer (NCO) development program.
- (6) Training extension courses use audiovisual equipment to present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard.

d. Training Tips and Instructions. The following are training tips and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX:

- (1) Know the requirements for breaching obstacles, marking obstacles, and tactical movement.
- (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
- (3) Review the standards for the T&EO that supports this exercise.
- (4) Conduct this STX using one of the following options:
 - (a) With ammunition, without ammunition, or using live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.
 - (b) With or without the Multiple Integrated Laser Equipment System (MILES). The MILES provides better feedback and should be used if it is available.
 - (c) Under all environmental conditions, both day and night and with or without NBC environment. These scenarios should involve an active NBC environment.
- (5) Ensure that this STX is initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (expect for planned AARs). During the "run" phase, the STX is executed under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat (including full operational security [OPSEC] and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distance). This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building block training (individual training and drills) to reach the run level of execution.
- (6) Ensure that the T&EO standards for this exercise (from Chapter 5) are met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(7) Conduct this exercise on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(8) Ensure that the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to portray threat activities realistically.

(9) Assign at least one evaluator to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR are in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(10) Ensure that OPFOR units look and fight like a potential enemy. This will help soldiers understand threat tactics, doctrine, and weapons systems.

e. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the platoon to breach an obstacle, move tactically, support by fire, and mark an obstacle.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night vision devices (NVDs).

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increase.

4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy obstacle has been established. Initial reports indicate that the obstacle is overwatched by a company-sized element. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and close air support (CAS). The enemy has used chemical weapons and will probably do so again. A breach of the obstacle has been ordered to allow maneuver forces to move through to attack the enemy. Figure 4-1 illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a company fragmentary order (FRAGO) by the platoon and ends after the obstacle is marked. An AAR should be held after the obstacle has been breached and marked. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon performance. Table 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and a recommended time for each portion of the STX.

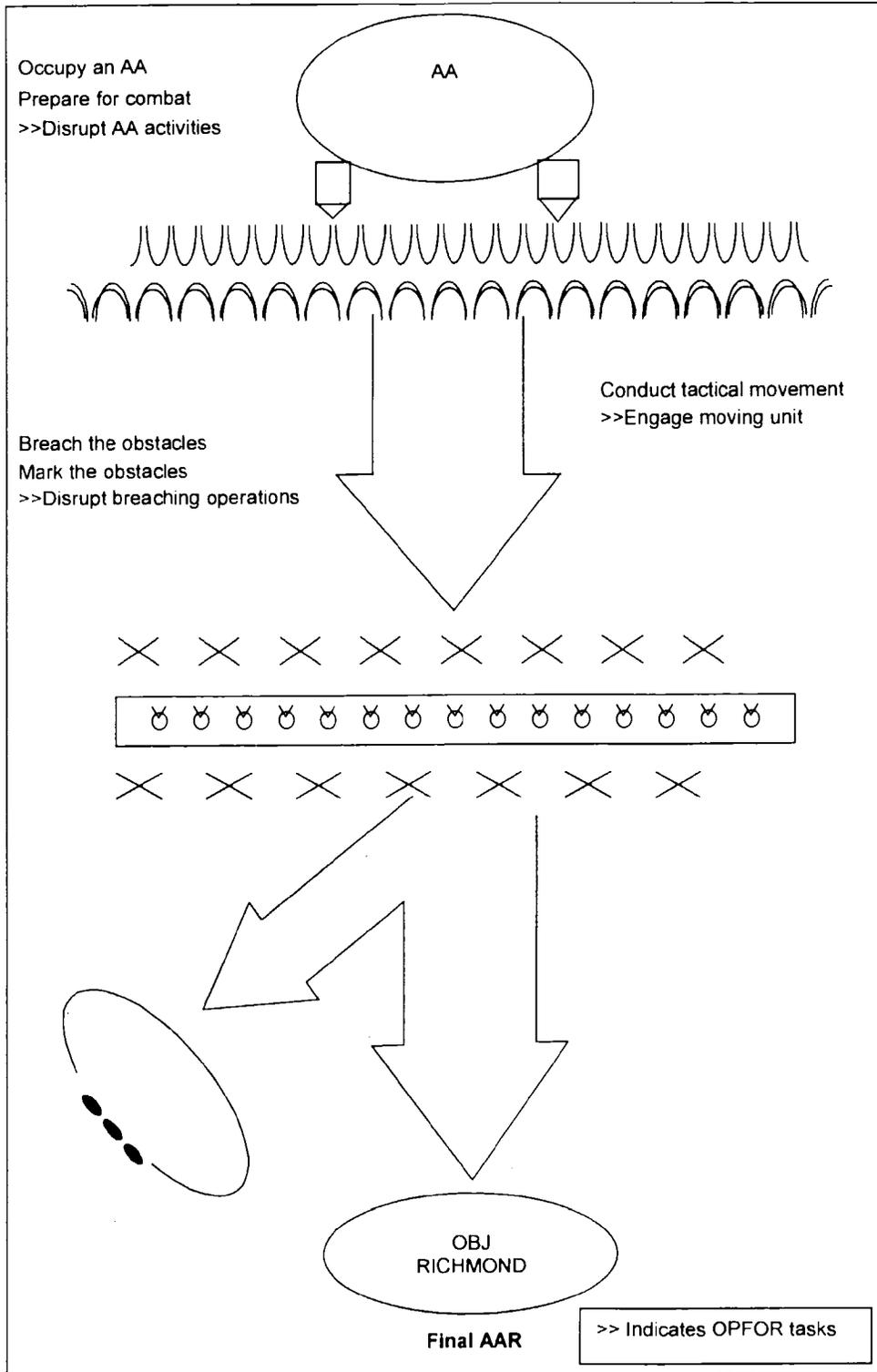


Figure 4-1. General Scenario STX

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
Module 1		
1	Occupy an AA	4 hours
2	Receive a FRAGO	15 minutes
3	Plan Breaching Operations	3 hours
4	Issue a FRAGO	2 hours
5	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
6	Conduct Precombat Operations	2 hours
7	Conduct Tactical Movement	1 hour
8	Breach the Obstacle	1 hour
9	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
10	Mark the Obstacle	1 hour
11	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
Total time:		17.25 hours
<p>1. These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</p> <p>2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the unit training proficiency.</p> <p>3. Additional time may be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</p> <p>NOTE: These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</p>		

5. Special Situation.

a. Your platoon is part of a company in a secure assembly area (AA). The platoon receives a FRAGO to breach obstacles (Figure 4-2).

b. The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is prepared to provide support for the breach and marking of the obstacle. The company commander orders your platoon to breach the obstacle.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The company commander or the platoon leader can conduct this exercise and will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon supporting the breach operations. This platoon will need an additional trainer or O/C.

b. Vehicles/Communications. Those organic to the platoon are needed for this exercise. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. Opposing Forces. The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th EN BN
FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
a. Enemy Forces. The enemy forces are at 60 to 70 percent strength. They are preparing to counterattack and are expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.	
b. Friendly Force. (Element designation) attack (date/time group) to destroy the enemy force at Objective _____ to disrupt the enemy counterattack.	
2. MISSION. (Element destination) is to provide breach support for (supported elements designation) to breach obstacles along the main avenue of approach.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of the Operations. (See overlay.)	
(1) Intent. Breach obstacles and destroy the enemy preparing to counterattack.	
(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire to (another) platoon.	
b. (Another) Platoon.	
(1) Provide breach support for (evaluated) platoon.	
(2) Prepare to replace (evaluated) platoon in case they become combat ineffective.	
c. (Evaluated) Platoon.	
(1) Provide local support by fire (initially).	
(2) Breach obstacles.	
(3) Mark obstacles according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).	
d. Coordinating Instructions.	
(1) Company release point (RP) is (grid).	
(2) Company linkup point is (grid).	

Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 5-2-E0001

d. Maneuver Area. A 15 x 4 kilometer training area is desired. This area should provide for infiltration, cross-county movement, locations for supply sites, and a complex obstacle. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader

to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select and conceal positions.

- e. Consolidated Support Requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001

Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See the note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.			

- f. Regulations and Requirements. Commanders should consult local regulations and range-control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate this STX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating STX 5-2-E0001

Task Title	Task Number
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-3-1018.05-R01A
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	03-2-3008.05-T01A
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	03-3-C208.05-T01A
Support Breaching Operations	05-3-0114
Reorganize as Infantry	05-2-1200
Fight as Infantry	05-2-1215

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

Develop Intelligence

Request a Standard Geospatial Product (05-1-1391)	5-4
Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products (05-1-1393)	5-6
Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-0403)	5-8
Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-3-0404)	5-11
Perform a Target Reconnaissance (05-3-0405)	5-14
Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-C412)	5-17
Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance (05-3-0413)	5-20
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)	5-23
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)	5-25

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)	5-28
Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015)	5-30
Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908)	5-33
Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)	5-36
Breach Obstacles (05-3-0004)	5-42
Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives (05-3-0201)	5-46
Disable a Bridge With Explosives (05-3-0202)	5-50
Support by Fire (05-3-1221)	5-53
React to a Direct-Fire/Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM) (05-3-1224)	5-55
Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-1226)	5-57
React to Contact (05-3-7122)	5-59
Create an Abatis (05-4-0205)	5-61
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)	5-64
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)	5-66
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)	5-71
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)	5-74
Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)	5-78
Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1000.05-T01A)	5-82
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)	5-86
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)	5-88
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Mechanized) (07-3-4135.05-T01A)	5-91
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)	5-94

Protect the Force

Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)	5-97
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)	5-100
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)	5-102
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)	5-104
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)	5-106
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)	5-108
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)	5-110
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)	5-112
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)	5-114
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)	5-116
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)	5-118

Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)	5-122
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)	5-124
Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-0514)	5-126
Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-2-0516)	5-128
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)	5-130
Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005)	5-133
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques (05-3-0043.05-R01A)	5-136
Support an Attack on Fortified Positions (05-3-0044)	5-140
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques (05-3-0046.05-R01A)	5-143
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques (05-3-0047.05-R01A)	5-147
Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield (05-3-0110)	5-151
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)	5-154
Conduct Breaching Operations (05-3-0114)	5-157
Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0116)	5-160
Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles (05-3-0204)	5-163
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)	5-166
Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-0303)	5-168
Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-0304)	5-171
Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-0305)	5-173
Construct a Tank Ditch (05-3-0306)	5-175
Construct a Log Obstacle (05-3-0307)	5-177
Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms (05-3-0311)	5-180
Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-0312)	5-183
Prepare an Expedient Ford (05-3-0603)	5-186
Construct Combat Roads/Trails (05-3-0705)	5-188
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)	5-191
Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield (05-3-2010)	5-194
Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011)	5-197
Mark a Minefield (05-4-0110.05-R01A)	5-200
Emplace a Nuisance Minefield (05-4-0117)	5-203
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)	5-205
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)	5-208
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)	5-210
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)	5-212
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)	5-214
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)	5-217
Perform CSS and Sustainment	
Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge (05-3-0619)	5-219
Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-0701)	5-222
Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges (05-3-0707)	5-224
Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces (05-3-0785)	5-226
Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-1600)	5-228
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)	5-230
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)	5-233
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)	5-236
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)	5-239
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)	5-241
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)	5-243
Exercise Command and Control	
Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)	5-245
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)	5-247
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)	5-251
Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element (05-3-0300)	5-253

Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018).....	5-255
Plan and Control Indirect Fire (05-3-1239).....	5-259
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A).....	5-261
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A).....	5-263

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters
 Two Assault Sections
 Obstacle Section
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads

TASK: Request a Standard Geospatial Product (05-1-1391)
 (GTA 05-02-014) (DD FORM 1348) (DD FORM 1348M)
 (SF 344)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff has Defense Mapping Agency (DMA) catalogs of maps, charts, and related products on hand, along with the following items: Department of Defense (DD) Forms 173/1 and 1348, Standard Form (SF) 344, and Graphic Training Aid (GTA) 05-02-014. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff requisitions the standard topographic product according to the procedures outlined in the DMA catalog. The digital units send and receive reports/requests using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The staff requisitions a standard topographic product according to procedures outlined in the DMA catalog. NOTE: In this task, use SF 344.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the correct volume of the DMA catalog. b. Selected the proper form. c. Entered the proper administrative data in the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Documented identifier (blocks 1 through 3). (2) Routing identifier (blocks 4 through 6). d. Selected the map index from the catalog. e. Identified maps or products to be ordered. f. Filled in the stock number (blocks 8 through 22). g. Filled in the unit of issue and the quantity (blocks 23 through 29). h. Filled in the requester's name, the date, and the demand code (blocks 30 through 39 and block 44). i. Filled in the serial number (blocks 40 through 43). j. Filled in the supplementary address and the signal (blocks 45 through 51). k. Filled in the fund, the distribution, and the project (blocks 52 through 59). l. Filled in the priority, the required delivery date, and the advice (blocks 60 through 66). m. Filled in the remarks. <p>2. The staff forwards the requisition to the appropriate office.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the form was complete and signed. b. Determined where to send the completed requisition. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products (05-1-1393)
 (FM 5-33) (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2)
 (FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff requests a nonstandard topographic product through higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff issues a valid request and receives needed topographic products. The digital units send and receive reports and requests using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The staff determines the need for nonstandard topographic support, based on the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Mission directives and operation plans (OPLANs). b. Geographic areas of responsibility. c. Availability of other topographic products. * 2. The staff coordinates the details of the project with the supporting topographic element. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the request was a valid task. b. Confirmed that the supporting topographic element had the capability to complete the task. c. Coordinated with the supporting topographic element to review products at critical points. d. Established a priority for the project with a firm completion date. * 3. The staff requests the necessary products. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submitted the request for products through the appropriate channels. b. Maintained a system to track, monitor, and follow up on active support requests. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-0403)
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-13)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a water crossing site reconnaissance. Personnel and equipment are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element performs the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that are required to support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. Digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader plans the site reconnaissance. NOTE: The digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to assist in the conduct of the initial reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed a map reconnaissance of the site (digital or analog). b. Selected routes for movement to and from the site. c. Selected rally points. <p>* 2. The element leader issues the OPORD. NOTE: The digital units can provide the OPORD using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The unit can send and receive reports using digital systems according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned responsibilities and designated far- and near-bank reconnaissance teams. b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the site. c. Described the action to take in the event of enemy contact. <p>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the team dismounted before arriving at the site, as required by the tactical situation. b. Ensured that the team displaced tactically. <p>* 4. The element leader observes and records access route conditions, to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recorded overhead obstructions with clearances of less than 4.3 meters. b. Recorded reductions in the travel way width that were less than 8 meters. c. Recorded gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater. d. Recorded curves having a radius of 25 meters or less. e. Recorded road surface conditions. f. Recorded obstacles, such as road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The far-bank team performs a far-bank reconnaissance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the condition of various points identified during the map reconnaissance/digital map reconnaissance, to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Bank heights. (2) Bank slopes. (3) Soil conditions. (4) Bank obstacles (natural or man-made). b. Estimated the gap width at the site. c. Determined the gap (wet) conditions in the vicinity of the crossing site, to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) River depth at 3-meter intervals along the site. (2) Sandbars or other water obstacles. (3) Bottom conditions. (4) Fluctuations in the current of the river. d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD. e. Returned to the rally point designated by the squad/section leader. <p>6. The near-bank team performs a near-bank reconnaissance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See subtask 5a. b. Estimated the gap width (wet) at the site. c. Measured the current velocity at the site. d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD. e. Returned to the designated rally point. <p>* 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the team leader.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all required information was obtained. b. Disseminated the information to the team members. <p>* 8. The element leader directs the movement from the site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the team displaced tactically. b. Directed the movement to subsequent sites as required by the OPORD. Repeated subtasks 2 through 7 until the mission was completed. c. Directed the return to the squad assembly area (AA). <p>* 9. The element leader submits his report to the command element.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units send and receive reports using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), providing updated situational awareness (SA).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a sketch of each site, to include the— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Bank heights and slopes. (2) River-bottom profile. (3) Estimated river width. b. Provided other information including— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The current velocity. (2) Soil conditions. (3) Route conditions leading to and from the site. (4) Obstacles. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2004	Determine Stream Velocity

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-3-0404)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-170)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a river reconnaissance. The unit has all organic tools and equipment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element performs the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that have a specific requirement and can support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements and dimensions are accurate within 10 percent. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader plans the river reconnaissance. NOTE: The digital units have the ability to conduct steps a-c using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS). a. Conducted a map reconnaissance of the river. b. Selected the routes for movement to and from the river. c. Selected the rally points (RPs).</p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues the OPORD to the elements. a. Assigned the element responsibilities and designated the near and farshore reconnaissance elements. b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the river. c. Described what actions should be taken in the event of enemy contact.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the river. a. Ensured that the element dismounted before arriving at the river as required by the tactical situation. b. Ensured that the element displaced tactically.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader observes and records the access-route conditions. a. Ensured that overhead obstructions had a clearance of less than 4.3 meters. b. Ensured that reductions in the travel-way width were below 18 meters. c. Ensured that gradients (slopes) were of 7 percent or greater. d. Ensured that curves had a radius of 25.15 meters or less. e. Observed the conditions of road surfaces. f. Observed obstacles that existed; for example, road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.</p> <p>5. The far-shore reconnaissance element conducts a reconnaissance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Determined the condition of various points that were identified during the map reconnaissance, to include the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Bank heights. (2) Bank slopes. (3) Soil conditions. (4) Bank obstacles that were natural or man-made. <p>b. Estimated the gap width at the river.</p> <p>c. Determined the wet-gap conditions in the vicinity of the river crossing, to include the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) River depth at 3.05-meter intervals along the river. (2) Sandbars or other water obstacles. (3) Bottom conditions. (4) River current fluctuations. <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the RP designated by the element leader.</p> <p>6. The near bank element conducts a reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See subtask 5a. b. Estimated the wet gap at the river. c. Measured the current velocity at the river. d. Collected any other information requested in the element leader's orders. e. Returned to the designated RP. <p>* 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all the required information was obtained. b. Disseminated all the information to the element members. <p>* 8. The element leader directs movement from the river.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the element displaced tactically. b. Directed movement to subsequent rivers as required by the OPORD. Repeated subtasks 2 through 7 until the mission was completed. c. Directed the return to the element assembly area (AA). <p>* 9. The element leader submits the report to the platoon leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a sketch of each river, to include the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Bank heights and slopes. (2) River bottom profile. (3) River width estimate. b. Provided other information, to include the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Current velocity. (2) Soil conditions. (3) Route conditions leading to and from the river. (4) Obstacles. <p>NOTE: The digital units submit reports or hard copy (Department of the Army [DA]) forms according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2004	Determine Stream Velocity
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Perform a Target Reconnaissance (05-3-0405)
 (FM 5-170) (DA FORM 2203-R) (FM 5-250)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives an order containing the grid coordinates of a potential demolition target and the depth of the obstacle. The area is secured, but enemy contact with squad-size elements is possible. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares and submits the demolition reconnaissance record, including all information to successfully execute the target. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and explosive calculations are accurate within 10 percent. The squad completes the reconnaissance within the timeline specified in the operation order (OPORD). The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares for the reconnaissance. NOTE: The digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to assist in the reconnaissance process, and Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to send and receive orders. a. Issued a warning order (WO) to ensure that subordinates knew the mission, the time and place to receive their orders, the departure time, and the preparatory actions to conduct while the plan was being made. b. Conducted a map reconnaissance to determine the routes and distances to and from the target. c. Performed a time estimate to determine how much time to spend on-site and filled out the demolition reconnaissance record. d. Formulated a reconnaissance plan or checklist to ensure that the squad obtained all the required information from the site and that all essential equipment was taken. e. Determined the availability of explosives. f. Briefed subordinates using the five-paragraph order format, ensuring that each squad member knew precisely what to do. g. Covered the site security and noise and light disciplines. 2. The element conducts the reconnaissance and obtains the required sketches and information. a. Obtained a situation map (SITMAP) sketch depicting the position of the target; the surrounding terrain features such as hills, power lines, and rivers; and the coordinates of objects keyed to existing maps, such as intersections and towns. b. Obtained a plan and a side view sketch of the demolition target showing the overall dimensions and the lines of cut for the following:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) A bridge that showed the overall dimensions of its critical members and the location of each line of cut.</p> <p>(2) A crater that showed the length and width of the target and the thickness of the wearing surface. A sketch that showed the depth and type of subgrade to determine the effect on the borehole depth of the side sketch.</p> <p>NOTE: The sketch also showed the length and location of each row of craters placed at a 45° angle to the axis of approach. The boreholes were offset from one another when lines of cut were placed in depth.</p> <p>(3) An abatis that showed the depth and width of the target.</p> <p>NOTE: The side view sketch stated the approximate height of the trees along with their average spacing and diameter; for example, trees with a diameter of 50- to 60-centimeters are spaced 3 to 3.7 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Obtained a plan and a cross section sketch of the demolition target showing the details of any demolition chambers, lines of cut, the location of charges, accurate dimensions of the members to be cut, the quantities of explosives, and the method of ignition for the following:</p> <p>(1) A bridge that showed the location of all the lines of cut and the location of each charge within the line of cut. The charge calculations and the placements need only to be shown once for similar members being cut. The method of attaching the charge was shown. More than one cross section sketch may be required, depending on the number of lines of cut.</p> <p>(2) A crater that showed the position and depth of each borehole, quantity of explosives per borehole, and method of priming.</p> <p>(3) An abatis that showed the 45° angle to the road where the charges were placed, and the separation between the trees to cut was 3 to 4 meters. Showed a cross section sketch of a single tree that demonstrated the charge calculation and the placement for the test shots that were to be performed on the trees having the average diameter of those found in the line of cut.</p> <p>NOTE: If time and the tactical situation permitted, the squad conducted test shots on the reconnaissance and then measured and marked all trees to be cut. If this was done, the charge calculation and placement were sketched once for each diameter requiring a different quantity of explosives.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the sketch showed the firing circuits and the firing points. The complete circuit was required and included the charges, branch lines, ring mains, and initiation sets. The sketch—</p> <p>(1) Contained a list of the quantity and type of required explosives.</p> <p>(2) Contained a list of all required demolition equipment and transportation.</p> <p>(3) Included an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare the demolition to state 1.</p> <p>(4) Included an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare the demolition to state 2.</p> <p>(5) Included an estimate of the time, labor, and equipment required to bypass the obstacle (specified location and method) and the required supplementary obstacles such as mines.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader notifies higher headquarters (HQ) when the element completes the on-site portion of the mission.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader completes the demolition reconnaissance record and submits it to higher HQ within the time specified in the orders.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units submit digital or hard copy (Department of the Army</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
[DA] Forms) reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-3055	Prepare a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of Bridge Destruction
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0201	Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives
05-3-0202	Disable a Bridge With Explosives
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-0412)
 (FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1248) (DA FORM 1249)
 (DA FORM 1250) (DA FORM 1251) (DA FORM 1252)
 (FM 3-21.71) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a technical reconnaissance to locate obstructions along a proposed movement route. Digital units have completed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The reconnaissance team conducts a technical reconnaissance to verify the technical data along the main supply route (MSR). All Department of the Army (DA) forms contain the required information. There are no time restraints, unless otherwise specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a technical reconnaissance.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information from higher headquarters (HQ) through All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for a ground or aviation security force. b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route. d. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area or target of the reconnaissance. f. Briefed subelement leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. g. Conducted troop-leading procedures. h. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). i. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance. <p>2. The reconnaissance team starts movement on the technical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved along the specified route. b. Maintained communications with the supported element. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The reconnaissance team conducts a bridge classification reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete the bridge reconnaissance report.</p> <p>b. Completed the bridge reconnaissance report with the required information.</p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team conducts a ferry reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete the ferry reconnaissance report.</p> <p>b. Completed the ferry reconnaissance report with the required information.</p> <p>5. The reconnaissance team conducts a ford reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete the ford reconnaissance report.</p> <p>b. Completed the ford reconnaissance report with the required information.</p> <p>6. The reconnaissance team conducts a road reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete the road reconnaissance report.</p> <p>b. Completed the road reconnaissance report with the required information.</p> <p>7. The reconnaissance team conducts a tunnel reconnaissance or an underpass reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete the tunnel reconnaissance report.</p> <p>b. Completed the tunnel reconnaissance report with the required information.</p> <p>NOTE: Not all types of reconnaissance may be applicable to the commander's intent or requirements.</p> <p>8. The reconnaissance team starts movement to the assembly area (AA).</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units send reports, orders, and digital overlays to update the common operational picture (COP). Appropriate DA forms are submitted according to standardization agreement (STANAG) requirements and the unit SOP.</p> <p>* 9. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit SOP or TACSOP determines the requirements for the debriefing.</p> <p>*10. The element leader provides completed reconnaissance forms to higher headquarters (HQ) or the requesting unit according to the SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2101	Determine the Percent of Slope
052-196-2103	Determine Gap Width
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-198-2007	Classify Vehicles Using Expedient Methods

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance (05-3-0413)
 (FM 5-170) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 5-100)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operations order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical reconnaissance for the purpose of gathering essential data and intelligence in the new area of operations (AO). The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepares the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The reconnaissance teams verify and accurately report the intelligence requirements (IR) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the S3, S2, or TF engineer. The digital units send reports, orders, and overlays through digital means. The appropriate follow-up Department of the Army (DA) forms are submitted according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical reconnaissance.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to assist in the reconnaissance process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated through the S3 or the TF engineer for the ground security force or the aviation security force. b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the S2. c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), and route and terrain. d. Reviewed the unit TACSOP or standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area, route, or zone reconnaissance (observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach [OCOKA]). <p>* 2. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the five-paragraph order format to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Whether the unit was mounted or dismounted. (2) The objectives of the reconnaissance. (3) Time and distance factors. (4) Noise and light discipline. (5) The methods of communication. (6) The action of the security team upon enemy contact. b. Conducted troop-leading procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). d. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>3. The reconnaissance team supports the area reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <p>a. Reconnoitered all terrain. b. Inspected and classified all bridges. c. Located suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges. d. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. e. Located obstacles. f. Located bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. g. Located and reported all enemy forces. h. Provided the current and projected enemy situation.</p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team supports a zone reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <p>a. Reconnoitered all key terrain. b. Inspected and classified all key bridges. c. Located suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges. d. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. e. Located obstacles in the zone, determining how to reduce the obstacles (assets and time). f. Located bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. g. Reported any sightings of enemy forces.</p> <p>NOTE: See the appropriate field manual for more detailed information. The digital units send reports and reconnaissance information using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS). Follow-up of the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms is required according to Standardization Agreement (STANAG) procedures and the unit SOP.</p> <p>5. The reconnaissance team supports the route reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <p>a. Determined the trafficability of the route. b. Reconnoitered the limit of direct-fire range and the terrain dominating the route. c. Reconnoitered all built-up areas, and identified— (1) The bypass routes. (2) The construction supplies and equipment. (3) The ambush sites. (4) Any evidence of booby traps. (5) Suitable sites for command and control facilities and combat service support (CSS) facilities. d. Reconnoitered all lateral routes to the limit of direct-fire range. e. Inspected and classified all bridges. f. Located fords or crossing sites near all bridges. (1) Determined the fordability and located nearby bypasses to support the combat and CSS units. (2) Marked the bridge classifications. (3) Marked the bypass route. g. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. h. Reconnoitered all defiles. i. Located obstacles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Located bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. k. Reported the route information. l. Located and reported all enemy forces that could influence movement along the route. 6. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit TACSOP or SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader— a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms. b. Provided the required overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of Bridge Destruction
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-225-2020	Recon a Potential Armored Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB) Launch Site

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-19.40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios. b. Annotated the date and time of capture. c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture. d. Noted the capturing unit. e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture. f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs). * 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Described the type of equipment and documents. b. Stated the date and time of capture. c. Identified the capturing unit. d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture. * 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment. b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)
 (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure. <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings. <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected. d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage. h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy. b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence. d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming. e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service. f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employed observation posts (OPs). b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Followed stand-to procedures. d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted. e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire. f. Used the challenge and password. g. Limited access into the area of the unit. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Picked up litter. j. Employed air guards. <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections
 Company
 Company Headquarters

TASK: Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is performing continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: According to the battalion standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. The digital units send and receive information via frequency-modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander assigns the unit fire support officer (FSO). NOTE: The digital units use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to perform collaborative planning and send and receive orders, reports, and requests according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>2. The FSO coordinates immediately for air defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.</p> <p>3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status and requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength if required.</p> <p>4. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish the assigned missions if necessary.</p> <p>5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested any support that the FSO needed (such as air defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements). b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions. c. Designated the company assembly areas (AAs). <p>6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo-hauling assets to support the new needs of the line company. b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged areas according to the tactical situation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Requested any additional Class V supplies (ammunition) that were required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary. d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion control in the field trains. e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary. (1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Located the equipment park on defensible terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0606	Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1126	Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015)

(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-100)

(FM 101-5)
(FM 5-170)

(FM 20-32)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The element reports and/or receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operation (AO). The location of obstacles are reported and or submitted through frequency-modulated (FM) means or the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to update the common operational picture (COP), the situational awareness (SA), and obstacle overlays. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element reports obstacle information that is required by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units can send reports and update the digital overlay to provide the current SA.</p> <p>a. Reported and/or received a status report and obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gave the serial number, type, location (8-digit coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</p> <p>NOTE: Proper authorization for emplacement of obstacles must be obtained.</p> <p>b. Received a SCATMINE record or a SCATMINE warning report.</p> <p>c. Received a map sheet(s).</p> <p>d. Received information on the enemy situation.</p> <p>e. Received additional assets or required equipment.</p> <p>NOTE: Notify the supply section and the engineer elements of the type and quantity of assets or equipment required.</p> <p>f. Reported and/or recorded obstacle information (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</p> <p>g. Reported information on the obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</p> <p>2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command.</p> <p>* 3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on SCATMINEs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; the relocation of material; the emplacement and execution of SCATMINES; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</p> <p>* 5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, recovery vehicles, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, mission location, map sheet(s), and engineer elements needing assistance.</p> <p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records obstacle information from the subordinate elements and the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updated the SA and obstacle overlays with team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations. b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC. c. Maintained files of reports sent. d. Coordinated with the battalion S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the subordinate elements of the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance. <p>* 7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer command on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908)
 (FM 3-90.1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, a unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit. c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures. f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit SOP or TACSOP. <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures.</p> <p>NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal.</p> <p>* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.</p> <p>NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Loaded vehicles according to the load plan.</p> <p>c. Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags.</p> <p>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</p> <p>* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</p> <p>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message and/or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>e. Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures.</p> <p>f. Briefed the chain of command and radio frequency.</p> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA.</p> <p>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</p> <p>b. Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.</p> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).</p> <p>a. Reported the position of enemy forces.</p> <p>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</p> <p>c. Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area.</p> <p>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</p> <p>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</p> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body.</p> <p>a. Secured the area.</p> <p>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</p> <p>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</p> <p>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>e. Marked vehicle positions.</p> <p>10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment an element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element organizes platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means, providing an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule. b. Issued a warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties. c. Consulted with the leaders and made tentative plans. d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and incorporated them into it. <p>NOTE: The company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Reconnoitered the area of operations. f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan. g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission. h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or written form. <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The key terrain. b. The enemy avenue of approach. c. The location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA). d. The limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire. e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets. f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which— 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire on TRPs and the EA at optimal ranges.</p> <p>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</p> <p>(3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</p> <p>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</p> <p>g. Covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>h. Covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</p> <p>i. The locations for observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon sector of fire.</p> <p>j. The location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD.</p> <p> a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</p> <p> b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</p> <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP.</p> <p> a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at the halt.</p> <p> b. Manned the company OPs.</p> <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP.</p> <p> a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</p> <p> b. Checked the consolidated range cards and sketches of the platoon fire plans to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies.</p> <p> c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach, covered by mutually supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies.</p> <p> d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage.</p> <p> e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually supporting interlocking fire covering the EA.</p> <p> f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding the established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF.</p>		
<p>NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors, and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</p> <p>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.</p> <p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area based on the factors of the METT-TC.</p> <p>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the BP to identify the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The location of checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO. (2) Observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach. (3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area. (4) Positions that would provide cover and concealment. (5) Location of OPs that provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield. (6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of firing positions and BPs that could not be blocked by blow down from structures. (7) Location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges. (8) Structures that dominate the built-up area. (9) Locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area. (10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense. <p>c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that units were tied in with the company or team forces.</p> <p>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind obstacles. The fire support team (FIST) planned the smoke.</p> <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</p> <p>b. Located platoons and oriented the company or team.</p> <p>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OP positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the platoon fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders (as time permitted).</p> <p>e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions, based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher HQ.</p> <p>NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</p> <p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the EA.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Included the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enemy avenue of approach. (2) Locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles. (3) Key terrain. (4) TRPs. (5) Artillery preplots. <p>b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment.</p> <p>c. Organized fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged.</p> <p>d. Used fire to interlock.</p> <p>NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire.</p> <p>e. Positioned the company or team around the EA. Centered one company or platoon the EA and one was positioned on both the right and left flanks.</p> <p>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible.</p> <p>g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points.</p> <p>h. Developed an obstacle plan that—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Tied obstacles into existing terrain features. (2) Slowed the enemy movement. (3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy. (4) Included mine fighting positions that could have been destroyed or used to the enemy advantage. (5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue(s) of approach. (6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them. (7) Placed obstacles in the EA so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel stopped in front of the obstacles. <p>*14. The platoon leaders brief the company or team commander on the EAs in each sector and any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander. b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using METT-TC factors to determine the— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Size of the enemy force. (2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team position. (3) Direction of enemy movement. (4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the EA of the company or team sector or the battalion TF. (5) Enemy arrival time at the company or team trigger point. c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information. d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of smoke and/or dust columns or sounds. e. Ordered the company or team and platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy. f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders. g. Reported to the battalion TF commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Controlled indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</p> <p>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</p> <p>i. Ordered platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. The company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point if the enemy elements are too strong. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP.</p> <p>a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.</p> <p>b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced.</p> <p>NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.</p> <p>17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack.</p> <p>a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.</p> <p>b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</p> <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with platoon leaders regarding the continuation of the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission.</p> <p>a. Determined the size, type, and location of enemy elements.</p> <p>b. Identified locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.</p> <p>c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements.</p> <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander—</p> <p>a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.</p> <p>b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy flank or rear (for counterattack by fire).</p> <p>c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the enemy trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver). Used the following techniques:</p> <p>(1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks.</p> <p>(2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed light vehicles and the dismounted infantry.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front. 25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission. *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the COP to provide SA to units operating in the area.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Breach Obstacles (05-3-0004)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver force that is conducting hasty breaching operations. The unit is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates the support, breach, and assault forces. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon creates and marks lanes through the obstacles in order to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The platoon creates the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or the platoon observes indirect enemy fire. Friendly forces should sustain no casualties when drifting out of the marked lanes. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacles from the information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units obtain obstacle information and intelligence updates through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, wire, nuclear weapon, antiairborne, water, beach, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater). b. Determined the obstacle locations and dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and the frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance of the obstacles and the surrounding terrain (as time permitted and when enough detailed information was not available). <p>* 2. The element leader, in coordination with the task force commander, determines the best method for breaching the obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the M9 armored combat earthmover (ACE), armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), heavy assault bridge (HAB) and/or other engineer equipment to perform mechanical obstacle breaching. b. Used the M173, M157, or M58A3 mine clearing line charge (MICLIC), the Antipersonnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS), bangalore torpedoes, or hand-emplaced charges for explosive obstacle breaching. <p>NOTE: Direct or indirect weapons may also be used; however, they require a high expenditure of ammunition.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Used planks, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications during manual obstacle-breaching operations.</p> <p>NOTE: Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the TF commander, determines the lane characteristics.</p> <p>a. Determined the lane width.</p> <p>NOTE: Standard lane widths are 1 meter for a footpath (for personnel only), 4 meters for an initial lane (used to pass assault vehicles), 8 meters for one-way vehicular traffic, and 16 meters for two-way vehicular traffic.</p> <p>b. Determined the number of lanes required. The minimum number of lanes for a maneuver company is one and the minimum number of lanes for a TF company is two.</p> <p>c. Determined the lane locations based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breaching force, time and equipment available for the breach, and the maneuver scheme.</p> <p>4. The element clears the obstacle of all mines and booby traps (as required).</p> <p>a. Identified the locations or possible locations of mines, trip wires, and booby traps.</p> <p>b. Neutralized mines and booby traps using line-charged or hand-emplaced explosives. Neutralized the mines before committing other engineer equipment to the obstacle reduction task.</p> <p>5. The element breaches the obstacle and creates the desired lane within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or the element observes indirect fire.</p> <p>NOTE: No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the element is conducting stealth breaching.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader directs the ACE operator to employ the ACE (when available) to neutralize the effects of tank ditches, road craters, tetrahedrons, dragon teeth, and similar obstacles. The ACE operator—</p> <p>a. Started the blade work 30 meters from the depression, using small cuts to make a shallow incline.</p> <p>b. Cut and filled the incline until it was traversable by the maneuver units and the ACE could cross the far bank.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the FBCB2 System with the locations of the cleared lanes and breached obstacles to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP).</p> <p>* 7. The element leader directs the employment of the AVLB to span the destroyed and disabled bridges and other gaps not exceeding 18.3 meters. The AVLB operator—</p> <p>a. Directed the driver to move the launcher to within 3 meters of the gap.</p> <p>b. Directed the driver to launch the bridge with the scissor cylinder. Ensured that the far end of the bridge did not exceed 61 centimeters above the surface plain.</p> <p>c. Directed the driver to disconnect the bridge from the launcher (upon completion of the launch).</p> <p>d. Directed the AVLB launcher to the designated position.</p> <p>e. Notified the section sergeant upon completion of the relocation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The element reduces the log, steel-beam post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools. NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-34 for additional information.</p> <p>9. The element reduces wire obstacles with explosives or assault ladders.</p> <p>10. The element removes rubble using engineer equipment or explosives.</p> <p>11. The element breaches a tank ditch or other escarpments with pioneer tools (if part of a prebreach operation).</p> <p>12. The element marks the cleared lanes. At a minimum, the platoon marks the entrance and exit points of the lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked the lanes temporarily with any available material. b. Improved the marking using the standard minefield marking set number 2 or the M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS) as soon as time and the availability of assets permitted (if the lane improvement task was not passed to a follow-on engineer unit). c. Marked the sides of the lanes, when not under enemy fire or as time permitted. <p>*13. The element leader reports the lane locations to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>14. The element provides guides or performs obstacle handover procedures to ensure a smooth flow of traffic through the lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided guide detachments and instructions for follow-on forces. b. Performed obstacle handover procedures according to the unit SOP. The gaining unit assumed total responsibility for the obstacles. <p>NOTE: Obstacle handover procedures enable follow-on forces to assume the guide requirements as well as the responsibility for maintaining and upgrading the lanes.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2084	Direct a Mine Clearing Line Charge Loading Team
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-3177	Supervise Mine Clearing Line Charge (MICLIC) Operations
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-194-4007	Execute a Complex Obstacle Breach

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives (05-3-0201)
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-250)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and is ordered to create a crater obstacle. A target reconnaissance has been conducted, and the reconnaissance report is available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates a crater obstacle within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The crater is a minimum of 1.8 meters deep and 6 meters wide and the side slopes are a minimum of 25 degrees. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT). The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. They update overlays and provide the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the applicable standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included a plan and a side view sketch showing overall dimensions and lines of cut. b. Included the location, depth, and quantity of explosives for each borehole and the method of ignition for each row of craters planned. c. Included a sketch showing firing circuits and firing points. d. Included a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types required, a list of the required equipment, and an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare and fire the demolition. <p>2. The element picks up all materials and equipment needed for the demolition.</p> <p>3. The element prepares demolitions in the rear to minimize the time on site; for example, cutting branch lines and priming blocks of explosives with detonating cord.</p> <p>NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader issues orders to the element using the five-paragraph field-order format.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The element leader briefs each man on site security, noise and light discipline, and specific tasks of each member.</p> <p>6. The element moves to the obstacle location.</p> <p>7. The element places the shaped charges in locations identified by the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct and/or indirect fire and is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</p> <p>8. The element connects the branch lines to the ring main and then primes the shaped charges.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Did not dual prime the shaped charges. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J hooks). Primed the shaped charges using M11s or M16s. Ensured that the single-primed shaped charges were dual-initiated. <p>9. The element detonates the shaped charges.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Attached the dual-initiation system to the detonating cord. Ensured that all element members were a safe distance away. <p>10. The element prepares the holes blown by shaped charges to achieve the correct depth for the crater being employed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensured that all the holes for a hasty crater were 1.5 meters deep. Ensured that the holes for a deliberate crater were alternately 1.5 meters and 2 meters deep, with 2-meter holes on both ends. Ensured that the enemy row of a relieved-face crater had 1.3-meter holes and the friendly row had 1.5-meter holes. <p>11. The element dual-primed all boreholes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Primed crater charge by placing a primed package of composition 4 explosive (C4) on the placement indicator marks. A second package of C4 is placed parallel on the opposite side of the cratering charge. Flush with the top for boreholes containing one cratering charge (1.5 meters deep). Primed both crater charges by placing a primed package of C4 on the placement indicator marks for boreholes containing two cratering charges. When placing the cratering charge in the borehole, ensured that the packages of C4 were on opposite sides of each other. <p>12. The element lays the ring mains and ties in the branch lines with demolition knots or J hooks.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensured that two ring mains are required for each row of holes. <p>NOTE: On relieved-face craters, the friendly-row ring mains are covered with 15 centimeters of earth to prevent the detonating cord from being cut when the enemy row is detonated.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensured that each system was independent. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and the branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J hooks). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: If traffic must pass over the site before detonation, the branch lines and the ring mains are placed in 15-centimeter deep trenches, covered with a u shaped picket, and backfilled with earth.</p> <p>13. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and detonate.</p> <p>14. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a preliminary target) and advises higher HQ that they are ready to detonate the target.</p> <p>NOTE: In the event that permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated.</p> <p>*15. Before firing, the element leader may hand over the target to a demolition-firing party. NOTE: Whenever possible, the hand-over procedures are as detailed as those in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder.</p> <p>*16. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ.</p> <p>17. If authority is given, the element improves the obstacle by laying the mines. a. Recorded the mines on a minefield recording form. b. Placed the mines at enemy-side approaches first, followed by the gap between the first and second lines of cut on the enemy side.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2018	Direct Placement of Cratering Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3025	Calculate Explosive Requirements for Road Craters
052-193-3055	Prepare a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-0516	Emplace Situational Obstacles
05-3-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Disable a Bridge With Explosives (05-3-0202)
 (FM 5-250) (DA FORM 1355) (DA FORM 2203-R)
 (FM 5-34) (TM 9-1300-214) (TM 9-1375-213-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and is ordered to execute a preliminary (as opposed to reserve) bridge demolition. A target reconnaissance has been conducted and Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R and/or a target folder is available. The gap is at least 25 meters wide. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares the bridge for demolition within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. On order, the element executes the demolition of the bridge to block or delay the enemy. The obstacle stops or delays all enemy wheeled and tracked vehicles. The digital units submit reports, obstacle locations, and the appropriate DA forms according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), mission dictating. Reports are sent and received using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains the following technical information from the reconnaissance report:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained sketches of the target showing dimensions, lines of cut, chambers, and how and where to place the charges. b. Obtained the quantities and type of explosives required. c. Obtained a sketch of the firing circuits and firing points. d. Obtained estimates of the time, labor, and equipment requirements for the demolition mission. e. Obtained estimates of time, labor, and equipment to complete any required bypass. <p>2. The element draws explosives and any additional tools or equipment according to the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear of the vehicle.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader issues orders to the element detailing each soldier's job using the five-paragraph field order format and covers site security and noise and light discipline.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units produce orders and reports and update the situational awareness (SA) through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>4. The element moves to the bridge location.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The crew assembles and places the charges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assembled the charges in the rear area when possible to minimize the time spent on the bridge. b. Placed the correctly sized charges on the members to be cut according to the information contained in the reconnaissance report. <p>6. The element lays the ring mains.</p> <p>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tied in the branch lines with demolition knots or J hooks. <p>NOTE: J hooks are used in conjunction with modernized demolition initiator (MDI) systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not crossover each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J hooks). <p>7. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. (In the event that permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated.)</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader may hand over the target to a demolition firing party before firing. The hand-over procedures are as detailed as those found in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder.</p> <p>8. If the element fires the demolition, only one soldier (with a noncommissioned officer [NCO] supervising) connects the blasting caps to the ring mains. All remaining element members are a safe distance away.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and demolition results to higher HQ. The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improved the obstacle by laying mines on enemy side approaches and possible bypass or bridge sites. b. Recorded the mines on a minefield record form and submitted to higher HQ according to standardization agreement (STANAG), applicable field manuals (FMs) and the unit SOP. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Direct Placement of Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3070	Calculate Concrete-Stripping Charges

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of Bridge Destruction
052-256-3034	Organize Jobsite Security

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Company Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Two Assault Sections
 Obstacle Section

TASK: Support by Fire (05-3-1221)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment supporting another element by fire during a movement or assault, or the element has been assigned a battle position with an engagement area and control measures. The primary direction of fire and the tentative support position have been designated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element suppresses the enemy and prevents them from surprising the overwatched element. The element takes all necessary precautions to prevent fratricide to the assault element. The element decisively engages at least 50 percent of the enemy element. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital systems. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element moves (mounted or dismounted) to the firing positions by using the best covered and concealed route. * 2. The element leader ensures that suppressive fires can be placed on enemy positions from the selected firing position. 3. The squads dismount and take up positions. * 4. The element squad leaders move the vehicles into a good position to cover the dismounted teams. If good positions are not available, dismounts weapons. * 5. The element leader assigns primary sectors of fire to the vehicle teams, squads, and dismounted teams and ensures that these assigned sectors do not block the route of the moving element. * 6. The element squad leaders position M60s, squad automatic weapons (SAWs), AT4s, and personnel to cover the assigned sectors of fire. 7. The element, on signal, places a heavy volume of fire on the objective, then signals by whistling or using verbal commands, hand-and-arm signals, or pyrotechnics. * 8. The element leader selects targets and controls the distribution of fires, concentrating on identified weapon positions (giving priority to automatic weapons and antiarmor weapons). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated only M60 or SAW gunners to fire in automatic mode. b. Distributed fires evenly over the objective if individual enemy positions could not be identified. c. Reduced the volume of fire when enemy fires became ineffective. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Increased the volume of the elements fire when the movement element neared the objective, keeping the enemy down.</p> <p>9. On the element leader's signal or when the assault begins, the element lifts fires. The unit remains prepared to engage any threat to the movement element, shifts fires to another target, or walks its fires across the objective in front of the movement element.</p> <p>10. The movement element is on the objective, and on order the element ceases fire and moves to the objective by the quickest means possible.</p> <p>*11. The element leader consolidates and reorganizes the element.</p> <p>a. Reported the element status to the unit commander.</p> <p>b. Reestablished the chain of command.</p> <p>c. Designated personnel to perform critical functions.</p> <p>(1) Redistributed ammunition.</p> <p>(2) Reported supply status.</p> <p>(3) Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>(4) Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points according to the unit commander's directive.</p> <p>(5) Collected enemy information and material, and reported to the unit commander.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports, request supplies, and update the common operational picture (COP) using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: React to a Direct-Fire/Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM) (05-3-1224)
 (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mounted element is moving in a contemporary operating environment and detects the signature of a weapon or detects ATGM rounds. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within 2 seconds of the alert, the platoon returns fire at known or suspected enemy positions. Within 4 seconds of the alert, all drivers take evasive action. The vehicle is not destroyed. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Any element member gives a warning (such as, "Missile, left front!").</p> <p>* 2. Vehicle commanders, receiving or observing fire, alert the other vehicle commanders by FM radio.</p> <p>3. Drivers take evasive action.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Evaded enemy fire by varying their speed or changing direction.</p> <p>NOTE: If they were in a Bradley engineer squad vehicle, they drove toward the missile, breaking right or left at the last possible moment before impact.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Sought the nearest covered and concealed position.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Moved in a straight line when the distance to cover was 50 meters or less.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Took evasive action when the distance was greater than 50 meters.</p> <p>4. The gunners continue suppressive fire.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Used smoke to obscure movement.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Oriented the vehicles toward the enemy.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader determines the enemy strength, composition, and disposition. The platoon—</p> <p>NOTE: Based on the degree of resistance and enemy fire, the element leader or his forward observer may call for indirect fire.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Disengaged and bypassed when the enemy did not present a threat and bypass routes were available.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Used a dismounted assault when encountered with close-in antiarmor fire that could not be suppressed or when obstacles restricted mounted movement.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Used a mounted assault when time was critical and the mission warranted the risk or when supporting fire destroyed most of the enemy.</p> <p>6. The unit fixes its fire on the enemy if there is strong enemy resistance and the platoon cannot maneuver its position to suppress the enemy while the platoon leader calls for fire support (FS).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader makes a spot report (SPOTREP). NOTE: The digital units can send reports, requests for fires, and alert messaging for a SPOTREP through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-1226)
 (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element is ordered by the company commander to halt for an indefinite period. The element leader orders the subordinate elements to establish hasty fighting positions. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon establishes local security and tenable defensive positions, which provides early warning and protection from enemy attack. The digital units update friendly locations and send and receive reports or orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The platoon is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders conduct a reconnaissance of tentative fighting positions. The--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Drivers stopped the vehicles in covered and concealed positions. b. Personnel dismounted and assumed tentative, hasty fighting positions. c. Leaders checked the tentative positions. d. Leaders designated sectors and general locations for observation posts (OPs), vehicles, and designated critical weapons systems. <p>NOTE: At night, element leaders take special precautions in designating positions. They reconnoiter the area first, position the OPs, and then have guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or OP team moves to an assigned position and sets up security.</p> <p>3. The element prepares designated positions.</p> <p>* 4. Vehicle commanders guide the vehicles into hull-down, covered and concealed positions using existing reverse slopes, ravines, saddles, ditches, and draws.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader assigns each vehicle a primary forward position, at least one alternate position, and a sector of fire.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader assigns each rifle team to a primary and alternate position. He assigns crew-served weapons a sector of fire and has antitank weaponry cover likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>7. Soldiers prepare prone positions at least 50 centimeters deep using holes and ditches if available.</p> <p>* 8. Leaders rapidly check positions selected by platoon members.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: At this point, the element leader may begin a more deliberate defense. The platoon leader selects exact fighting positions, coordinates with adjacent elements, and starts to prepare the range cards. Platoon members prepare positions according to the order of the element leader or the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The digital units update the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) providing current situational awareness, according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Six Engineer Squads
 Two Assault Sections
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section

TASK: React to Contact (05-3-7122)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 17-95)
 (FM 5-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon, moving mounted or dismounted, makes visual contact with the enemy or encounters enemy fire. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element returns fire within 3 seconds, locates and engages the enemy with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds, and causes at least one enemy casualty. The leader can point out at least one-half of the enemy positions and identify the types of weapons, such as small arms or light machine guns. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element makes visual contact with the enemy, evaluates the situation, and determines a course of action (COA). NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with enemy locations to update situational awareness and the common operational picture (COP) as the situation permits.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader chooses to bypass the enemy if it is not a threat and the mission is not impeded.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader gives the order to conduct fire and movement if the enemy is a threat or the mission is impeded.</p> <p>4. The element reacts to enemy fire. a. Took cover immediately and returned fire within 3 seconds. b. Located actual or suspected enemy positions and engaged them with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds. c. Made contact (visual or verbal) with the element members on their left and right.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader communicates with the element members. a. Relayed commands and signals to the squad leaders. b. Made frequent visual contact with the squad leaders.</p> <p>* 6. The squad leaders communicate with the squad members. a. Checked the status of the squad members either visually or verbally. b. Relayed commands and signals from the element leader.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader evaluates the situation and determines the COA. a. Used an assault element to attack the objective by using fire and movement if the enemy was outnumbered or the mission was impeded.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Gave the order to disengage to defend from another battle position, prepared a counterattack, withdrew, or continued the mission if the element was outnumbered. * 8. The element leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) and includes enemy contact and casualty information. NOTE: The digital units send a SPOTREP using FM or digital means according to the standard operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections
 Six Engineer Squads
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Create an Abatis (05-4-0205)
 (FM 5-250) (DA FORM 1355) (DA FORM 2203-R)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element is ordered to create an abatis. A Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R is available. The site selected complies with the requirements for an effective abatis. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates an abatis within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The abatis is a minimum of 75 meters deep and tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. There are 10 to 25 trees on each side of the road. Seventy-five percent of the trees are attached to their stumps. The abatis stops or delays an enemy main battle tank (MBT). The digital units submit reports and obstacle locations according to the unit tactical standard operating procedures (TACSOP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. DA Forms 2203-R are submitted according to the applicable standardization agreement (STANAG) requirements. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>NOTE: This information can be provided by the element leader or collected from other sources, such as the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or other units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Detailed a plan and side view sketch showing the overall dimensions and lines of cut. b. Determined the spacing between the trees to be cut, the tree diameters, the amount of explosives required for each tree, and examples of charge placement. c. Detailed a sketch showing the firing initiation system. d. Itemized a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types, a list of equipment, and an estimation of time and labor needed to prepare and fire the demolition. <p>2. To minimize the time spent on-site, the squad prepares materials and equipment for the demolition; for example, primes blocks of explosive with detonating cord and prepares individual charges.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader issues orders to the squad using the five-paragraph field-order format. The orders emphasize site security and noise and light discipline, and ensure that each member knows exactly what to do.</p> <p>4. The squad moves to the obstacle location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that no personnel rode in the rear of a vehicle that was carrying explosives. b. Carried the blasting caps in a separate vehicle. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: If this is not possible, place the caps in a closed metal can; carry them in the front of the vehicle and carry the explosives in the rear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader selects the trees to be cut based on the anticipated enemy vehicles. The trees are measured at a point on the trunk 1.5 meters above the ground.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected trees about 60 centimeters in diameter to oppose tracked vehicles. b. Selected trees spaced 3 to 4 meters apart to provide enough obstacle density. <p>NOTE: This method prevents vehicles, especially tracks, from driving over the tops of fallen trees.</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct or indirect fire and is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</p> <p>6. The squad creates an abatis using pioneer tools.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cut the trees on one side of the trail or road. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Felled the trees at a 45° angle to the road with the tops toward the enemy. (2) Cut the trees 1.5 meters above the ground. (3) Did not cut the trees completely through the trunk; allowed the trunk to remain attached to the stump to impede the enemy in clearing the obstacle. b. Used the same procedures on the opposite side of the road; cut the trees and felled them on the top of the previously cut trees. <p>7. The squad creates an abatis with explosives.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared a test shot on a tree. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Calculated the charge using $P = D^2/50$—where: P = pounds of trinitrotoluene (TNT), D = diameter of tree in inches at 1.5 meters from the ground. <p>NOTE: The formula is $P=D^2/50$.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Removed the bark before placing the charge. (3) Placed the charge 1.5 meters above the ground on the side of the direction of fall. (4) Primed the charge in the center of the outside face of the explosives. Ensured that the charge was twice as wide as it was high and 2.5 to 5.0 centimeters thick. (5) Attached the charge firmly with tape, wire, or twine. b. Fired the test shot and adjusted the charges as necessary. Calculated the charge for each tree using the test-shot data. c. Placed charges on all the trees to be felled. See subtask 7a. d. Laid ring mains and attached branch lines with a girth hitch and one extra turn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Checked the initiation system for breaks. (2) Ensured that the detonating cord, ring mains, and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not crossover each other except where connected by knots or detonating-cord clips. (3) Placed two ring mains on each side of the road if the charges were dual-primed. <p>8. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and fire.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a preliminary target) and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that it is ready to execute the target. If permission has been given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed.</p> <p>*10. The element leader may turn over the target to a demolition firing party. Whenever possible, the turnover procedures are as detailed as those found in part 4 of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder.</p> <p>11. The squad executes the target.</p> <p>12. The squad improves the abatis, if time permits.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Laid mines and booby traps (if authority was given) along the enemy side approaches and in the first 10 meters of the obstacle. Recorded the placement on DA Form 1355.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Used wire rope to join the trees together beginning on the enemy side.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Laid concertina wire to enhance the mines and booby traps on the enemy side.</p> <p>NOTE: The wire can be laid throughout the abatis.</p> <p>*13. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results to higher HQ, to include the obstacle depth and possible bypass routes.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and report the location of the obstacle to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3055	Prepare a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters." b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Personnel closed all hatches. (2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader. 2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader. 3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions. b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions. 4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD). 5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 6. The element consolidates and reorganizes. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. Digital units send and receive the reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units, digitally or verbally.</p> <p>* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.</p> <p>* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained SA. b. Submitted reports and overlays. c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires. <p>* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the unit identification. b. Gave the times of departure and return. c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO). <p>* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided terrain information. b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions. c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites. d. Provided the latest enemy activity. e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions. f. Provided obstacle locations. g. Provided the fire support plan. h. Provided unit support; for example, fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces. i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry. j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points. <p>* 6. Leaders of the two units must plan for and coordinate the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence. b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes. c. Coordinated the passing unit scheme of maneuver of the passing unit. d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information. e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage. f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures. g. Planned for security measures for the passage. h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans. i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage. j. Coordinated CSS. <p>* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included contact points. b. Included passage routes and lanes. c. Included passage points. d. Included release points (RPs). e. Included AAs (rearward passage). <p>* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.</p> <p>* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Located passage routes and lanes. b. Located passage points. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes.</p> <p>d. Located RPs.</p> <p>e. Located AAs (for rearward passage).</p> <p>f. Located contact points.</p> <p>g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage.</p> <p>h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.</p> <p>*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities are continued as normal throughout the passage and continued after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.</p> <p>*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.</p> <p>12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.</p> <p>*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <p> a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen.</p> <p> b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p> c. Confirmed the chain of command.</p> <p> d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact.</p> <p> e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</p> <p> f. Provided the time schedule, the suspenses, and any limits on the actions.</p> <p>*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5 with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.</p> <p>15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.</p> <p>16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p>NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.</p> <p>17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared</p> <p>19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.</p> <p>20. The company is counted through the RPs by the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG).</p> <p>21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.</p> <p>22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, a security halt may be executed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position.</p> <p>25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p>26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines.</p> <p>27. The company halts and establishes security.</p> <p>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</p> <p>28. The leader contacted the forward unit and informed it that the unit was ready to reenter.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. Before reentry, if communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.</p> <p>29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged.</p> <p>30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals.</p> <p>31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point.</p> <p>32. The 1SG or XO and PSG count and identify each platoon as it passes through the passage point.</p> <p>33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit.</p> <p>34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing.</p> <p>36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established and manned contact points. b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7. c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time. d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required. <p>NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply of fuel and ammunition.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections
 Company

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)
 (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined essential equipment needed. 		
* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA. d. Identified the march order. e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level. 		
3. The quartering party moves along the march route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes. e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security. <p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. <p>6. The element establishes the AA perimeter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged positions. i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices. <p>7. The element performs internal AA operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the elements signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ). <p>* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact. <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicated the start point (SP). b. Identified locations of friendly units. c. Identified potential ambush sites. d. Identified checkpoints (CPs). e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts. f. Indicated the release point (RP). <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices. d. Verified map information. e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time. i. Prepared the strip map. <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included military police (MP) support. b. Included medical support. c. Included fire support (FS). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Included engineer support.</p> <p>e. Included maintenance contact team support.</p> <p>f. Included additional requirements.</p> <p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</p> <p>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</p> <p>c. Reported major deficiencies.</p> <p>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</p> <p>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</p> <p>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</p> <p>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</p> <p>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</p> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <p>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</p> <p>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</p> <p>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</p> <p>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</p> <p>e. Specified passenger locations.</p> <p>f. Appointed air guards.</p> <p>g. Organized the trail party element.</p> <p>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</p> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</p> <p>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</p> <p>c. Detailed the convoy route.</p> <p>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</p> <p>e. Specified convoy intervals.</p> <p>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</p> <p>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</p> <p>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</p> <p>j. Specified the location of medical support.</p> <p>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</p> <p>l. Briefed communication procedures.</p> <p>m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination.</p> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <p>a. Crossed at the specified time.</p> <p>b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP.</p> <p>c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</p> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Reported the SP crossing time.</p> <p>b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed.</p> <p>c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps.</p> <p>d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</p> <p>e. Reported the RP crossing time.</p> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <p>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed CPs as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts. <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified time. <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ. <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods. <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander. <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections. <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit defensive sector or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps. b. Established local security. c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. d. Designated sectors and general locations for operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. <p>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or the operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplaced the M8A1 Chemical Alarm System, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP. b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small arms fire. c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel. d. Designated covered and concealed routes to and from the OP. e. Established communications from the operations section to the unit command post (CP). <p>NOTE: The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector. <p>* 3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs). b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan. <p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range. Warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body.</p> <p>b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit position.</p> <p>c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets.</p> <p>d. Emplaced expedient early warning devices before dark, if possible.</p> <p>e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password.</p> <p>f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <p>a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA).</p> <p>b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA).</p> <p>c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs.</p> <p>d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside hand grenade range.</p> <p>* 6. Leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <p>a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and its range.</p> <p>b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <p>a. Established boundary responsibilities.</p> <p>b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector.</p> <p>c. Ensured that observation and fires overlapped.</p> <p>8. The element occupies defensive positions.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally, these are in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</p> <p>a. Physically occupied the assigned positions.</p> <p>b. Physically reconnoitered in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, locate dead space, and view the terrain from the enemy perspective.</p> <p>c. Prepared and forwarded crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning.</p> <p>d. Installed aiming stakes.</p> <p>e. Cleared fields of fire.</p> <p>f. Emplaced obstacles according to the company obstacle plan.</p> <p>g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 0.5 meters of the parapet.</p> <p>h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.</p> <p>i. Camouflaged positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation, ensuring that fighting positions were not detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position.</p> <p>j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</p> <p>k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>l. Ensured that all element members knew the element CP location.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader, along with the fire support team (FIST) or FO if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <p>a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Planned final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Registered and adjusted TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.</p> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications.</p> <p>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations section, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support team.</p> <p>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational.</p> <p>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</p> <p>*11. The element leader prepares a sector sketch.</p> <p>a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to the terrain features.</p> <p>b. Identified the location of the squad fighting position location.</p> <p>c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</p> <p>d. Identified the type of weapon and the fire control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and the final protective line [FPL]) for each position.</p> <p>e. Identified the squad leader's position and the OP locations.</p> <p>f. Marked the dead space.</p> <p>g. Identified obstacle locations.</p> <p>h. Indicated the direction of north.</p> <p>i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</p> <p>*12. The element leader prepares a platoon sector sketch.</p> <p>a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA.</p> <p>b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire.</p> <p>c. Indicated the location of vehicles, antiarmor, and automatic weapon positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL, or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and TRPs.</p> <p>d. Identified the location of OPs and patrol routes, if any had been planned.</p> <p>e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems.</p> <p>f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated.</p> <p>g. Indicated the direction of north.</p> <p>h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to company level.</p> <p>i. Indicated the date-time group.</p> <p>j. Identified the position of the platoon CP.</p> <p>k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</p> <p>13. The element continues to improve defensive positions.</p> <p>a. Improved positions according to the SOP work priorities.</p> <p>b. Upgraded positions as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-0516	Emplace Situational Obstacles
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Two Assault Sections
 Obstacle Section
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1000.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-21.71)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a larger force in an urban environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assault and clear a building. The building has two levels and contains a squad-sized enemy element. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon assaults and clears the building according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs), the order, and the commander's guidance. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all the enemy in the building. The platoon complies with the ROE. The time to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader gains and maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System (if applicable), frequency-modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), or other available information sources. * 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WO) to the platoon in enough time for squad leaders to have maximum planning time. * 3. The platoon leader plans the assault using troop-leading procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a digital or conventional map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified tentative rally points, as required. (2) Identified the objective rally point (ORP). (3) Identified tentative support by fire (SBF) and assault positions. (4) Identified likely avenues of approach (AAs) for enemy reinforcing elements. (5) Identified routes to and from the objective. (6) Marked tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps, as appropriate. b. Evaluated the situation, including the following factors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Building types (including layout and construction materials). (2) Subterranean entry and exit points and AAs. (3) Requirements for special equipment and materials. c. Planned and coordinated indirect-fire support or close-air support, if available. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Identified direct-fire responsibilities.</p> <p>e. Organized the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>(1) Designated the support element.</p> <p>NOTE: May include Bradley fighting vehicles (BFVs).</p> <p>(2) Designated the breach element.</p> <p>(3) Designated the assault element.</p> <p>f. Addressed actions to take on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader disseminates reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE/ROI.</p> <p>6. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>8. The platoon moves tactically to the ORP, if used.</p> <p>a. Secured the ORP.</p> <p>b. Occupied the ORP.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leader and reconnaissance element conduct the reconnaissance based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</p> <p>a. Entered way points into the position/navigation (POS/NAV) equipment to aid navigation, if necessary.</p> <p>b. Verified routes to assault, support, and security positions.</p> <p>c. Observed the target, and verified and updated intelligence information.</p> <p>d. Selected assault, support, and security positions.</p> <p>e. Left the security element to observe the objective.</p> <p>f. Returned to the ORP or other platoon position.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>*11. The platoon leader updates the enemy situation.</p> <p>*12. The platoon leader disseminates updated digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>13. The platoon enters way points into the POS/NAV equipment to aid navigation, if necessary.</p> <p>*14. The element leader employs the support element and indirect fires to isolate the building and overwatch the breach and assault elements during movement to the objective.</p> <p>a. Employed available weapons in SBF positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions.</p> <p>b. Employed indirect fires and smoke to suppress, obscure, or destroy enemy elements.</p> <p>c. Employed available weapons to observe identified subterranean entry and exit points.</p> <p>d. Employed available assets to breach walls and obstacles.</p> <p>15. The breach element conducts tactical movement from the dismount point to the objective.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Initiated movement after enemy defensive positions were suppressed, obscured, or destroyed.</p> <p>b. Used covered and concealed routes that did not mask friendly suppressive fires.</p> <p>c. Crossed open areas rapidly, using concealment of smoke and suppression of enemy targets by the support element.</p> <p>16. The assault element conducts tactical movement from the dismount point to the objective.</p> <p>a. Trailed the breach element according to METT-TC factors.</p> <p>b. Provided additional security and support (if needed) to the breach element.</p> <p>c. Engaged enemy forces with the appropriate weapons systems to destroy or force the withdrawal of sniper teams, antiarmor teams, and armor vehicles within the sector.</p> <p>d. Maintained 360° security.</p> <p>e. Monitored and controlled the flow of the battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.</p> <p>*17. The PSG or weapons squad leader employs direct and indirect fires to overwatch and protect the breach and assault elements during building clearance.</p> <p>18. The breach element enters the building.</p> <p>a. Entered the building at the designated entry point.</p> <p>b. Secured and maintained a foothold for the assault element.</p> <p>c. Provided additional support for the assault element.</p> <p>19. The assault element enters and clears the building.</p> <p>a. Cleared the building and/or rooms according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>(1) Clearing teams cleared the building, room by room.</p> <p>(a) Took up positions inside the room that allowed the element to completely dominate the room and eliminate the threat.</p> <p>(b) Engaged targets as they moved to their designated points of domination.</p> <p>(c) Ensured that points of domination were not in front of doors and windows.</p> <p>(d) Observed the ceiling, floor, and walls for mouse holes and loopholes.</p> <p>(e) Exercised fire control and discriminated direct fires.</p> <p>(f) Marked the building according to the unit TACSOP to designate a cleared building.</p> <p>(2) Clearing teams or designated personnel from the assault element cleared a staircase, if required.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that 360° and three-dimensional security was maintained in the immediate vicinity of the staircase.</p> <p>(b) Located, marked, bypassed, and cleared obstacles and booby traps blocking access to the staircase.</p> <p>(c) Moved up the stairs using the fire-team or buddy-team flow.</p> <p>(d) Secured each landing before continuing up or down additional flights.</p> <p>NOTE: Leaders should consider the use of 5.56-mm soft rounds while clearing staircases. These rounds will penetrate human bodies and walls and then stop either in the body or in the wall, thus preventing the possibility of fratricide or injury to noncombatants. To prevent the possibility of fratricide or injury to noncombatants, soldiers should consider the use of nonlethal stun grenades rather than live fragmentary grenades.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Reported the clearance to the platoon leader. c. Continued operations according to the platoon leader's intent. *20. The platoon leader keeps the company commander informed throughout the operation. a. Sent updated situation reports (SITREPs) as necessary during the operation. b. Positioned personnel to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration into the building. c. Reported the completion building clearance. d. Redistributed ammunition and requested resupply, as required. 21. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes, as necessary. 22. The platoon secures and evacuates enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and noncombatants, as necessary. 23. The platoon treats and evacuates casualties. 24. The platoon processes any captured documents or equipment. 25. The platoon leader reports the platoon status to higher headquarters (HQ). 26. The platoon continues operations, as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads

TASK: React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)
 (FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades. b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated. 2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified enemy positions. b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy. c. Took up covered positions. d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush. 3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first. b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke. c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position. 4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position. b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques. 5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position. b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy. * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. a. Reported the situation to higher HQ. b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary. c. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission. b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission. c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued. d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD. <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions. b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points. c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units. d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element. e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact. <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Provided the soldiers with load guides. g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans. <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.</p> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <p>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</p> <p>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Followed the prescribed route.</p> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</p> <p>b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.</p> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <p>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD.</p> <p>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <p>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</p> <p>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</p> <p>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT).</p> <p>d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</p> <p>f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit.</p> <p>h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p> <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <p>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</p> <p>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</p> <p>c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.</p> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <p>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</p> <p>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</p> <p>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Mechanized) (07-3-4135.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)
 (FM 7-85) (FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: While conducting tactical operations, either independently or as part of a company team, the element receives an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to clear an objective in restricted terrain. The restricted terrain may be a heavily wooded area, choke point, defile, trail, or corridor. The enemy is defending the objective. Indirect fire and intelligence assets may be available to the element. Contact may occur at the line of departure (LD). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element suppresses and/or obscures the defending enemy, protecting the infantry squads as it maneuvers through the restricted area. The element clears the objective area of obstacles and enemy elements. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader plans for clearance of restricted terrain according to the OPORD and FRAGO; unit standing operating procedure (SOP); and mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated and planned indirect fires to obscure and suppress enemy forces. b. Determined locations of the enemy vehicles, key weapons systems, and infantry elements in the area of operations (AO). c. Identified potential enemy reserve locations. d. Identified enemy observation posts (OPs). e. Assessed the impact of enemy nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) artillery capabilities. f. Determined the method for clearance operations. 2. The platoon assumes posture to begin clearing the restricted terrain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established support by fire (SBF) positions using Bradley engineer fighting vehicles (B-EFVs) or infantry squads. b. Suppressed or destroyed any known enemy positions to allow friendly forces to approach the restricted terrain. c. Provided SBF for the infantry squads from the dismount points. d. The platoon leader employed indirect fires to suppress and/or destroy enemy elements. e. Infantry squads moved along axes that provided cover and concealment. f. Executed one of the following battle drills: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) React to contact. (2) Break contact. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The platoon clears the restricted terrain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the B-EFVs maintained 360° security and provided a base of fire to protect the infantry squads as they maneuvered and cleared the area. b. Ensured that the infantry squads selected a movement technique appropriate for the terrain and enemy threat. c. Cleared objectives that dominated the area along the restricted terrain, destroying enemy forces, forcing the enemy to withdraw, and/or breaching obstacles as required. These terrain features included the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Buildings on either side of the road. (2) Ridge lines on either side of the defile. (3) Wood lines on either side of a road or trail through heavily wooded areas. d. The infantry squads secured the area, which allowed the B-EFVs to bound forward. e. The B-EFVs bounded to new positions to provide a base of fire for maneuver by the infantry squads. f. Attached engineers or tanks breached point obstacles on the roadway, path, or defile. g. Repeated clearance procedures until all enemy forces in the restricted terrain were destroyed or withdrew and all obstacles were cleared. <p>NOTE: Infantry elements stop at designated points or terrain features so the B-EFVs can provide support.</p> <p>4. The platoon secures the farside of the danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maneuvered the B-EFVs to establish SBF positions on the farside of the danger area. b. Established, as applicable, a base of fire to protect the deployment of the follow-on force that was assuming the fight or to destroy or suppress any enemy elements that threatened friendly forces as they exited the restricted terrain. c. Assisted the passage of lines (as applicable) according to training and evaluation outline (T&EO) number 07-2-1125.05-T01A. d. Defeated enemy counterattacks. e. Provided observation beyond the restricted terrain. f. Integrated indirect fires, as necessary. g. Maintained a safety arc with the B-EFVs over the exposed infantry squads maneuvering to the front. <p>NOTE: The M1A1/A2 safety arc is 70° within a range of 1,000 meters; the BFV safety arc is 10 meters within 400 meters.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader keeps the company commander informed throughout the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sent updated situation reports (SITREPs) as necessary during the clearance. b. Reported the clearance of the objective. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned all squads to an AOR. b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs. c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard. * 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation. b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions. 3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement. c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control. * 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely. b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible. c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely. 5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted. b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</p> <p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique. NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*11. Leaders use control measures during the movement. a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.		
*12. The element leader controls movement of the elements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.		
*13. The element leader knows the elements location at all times. a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements. Was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-19)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks. * 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders. * 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary. c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon. * 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary. * 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum. * 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required. b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission. <p>9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment. <p>2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds. b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes. <p>3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover. <p>* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? (3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Was it day or night? (2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position. <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. <p>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4. b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)
 (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed. <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas. <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment. <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message. * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed. 3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order. 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters. 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities. 2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task). 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke. * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. * 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <p>a. Without warning, soldiers—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closed their eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. <p>b. With warning, soldiers—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas. <p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required. k. Extinguished all fires. <p>* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Contaminated element designation. b. Contaminated element location. c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign. d. Time that the element became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team). * 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support. b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon). c. Coordinated with supporting units. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided adequate overhead concealment. b. Provided good drainage. c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes). d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down. e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site). <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination element. d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites. <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element. <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up the decontamination site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site. (2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site. (3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. <p>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site. <p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</p> <p>b. Washed vehicles.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</p> <p>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</p> <p>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The contaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval. <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible. <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)
 (FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed in a contemporary operating environment. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The element location or identity cannot be determined through aerial or ground surveillance. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot. <p>2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy ground or aerial fires. c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions. <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>Note: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended with the surroundings. c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows. g. Used Camouflage Screen Systems to enhance natural materials. h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted. k. Concealed vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy. <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and completed policing of debris or spoil from the area. <p>* 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-0514)
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is preparing for defensive operations. Obstacle and survivability plans have been approved. The company commander has task-organized the engineer assets needed to emplace directed obstacles. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The obstacles are correctly sited, built to standard, and handed over to maneuver forces according to the established timelines. The digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander supervises an obstacle emplacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the fire support targets were refined. b. Coordinated for critical friendly zones (CFZs). c. Coordinated for air defense artillery (ADA) coverage. d. Coordinated the linkups between the engineer elements and the supported units. e. Briefed the element leader on the intent of the obstacle group, to include a tentative obstacle group design. f. Informed the element leader on the type of mine distribution method to use. g. Provided the element leader with a timeline for countermobility efforts. h. Coordinated for maneuver support to assist in the obstacle emplacement. <p>2. The company command post (CP) monitors the obstacle emplacement.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units report the locations of the completed obstacles, populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the locations of the obstacles, and send status reports and requests according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored the progress, reported the status, and adjusted the execution matrix, as required. b. Tracked the turnover of the completed obstacles to the overwatching maneuver units. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3125	Direct a Row Minefield Siting Party

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0126	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Obstacle Section
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Two Assault Sections
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Company Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads

TASK: Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-2-0516)
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment as part of a maneuver brigade or task force (TF), during offensive operations and/or attack enemy formations or during defensive operations. An approved maneuver plan is provided for the emplacement of ground-emplaced situational tactical obstacles to protect the maneuver brigade or TF. Class V (mines), equipment, and personnel are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and all systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Triggers are identified and reported in an accurate and timely manner. The obstacles are emplaced to achieve the desired effect in conjunction with direct or indirect fires. The element does not suffer losses of personnel or equipment. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element positions Volcanoes or Hornets and necessary Class V reloads where they can react within the established timelines. * 2. The element leader conducts rehearsals. 3. The element emplaces the situational obstacles. NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the digital obstacle overlay using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. a. Provided operations security (OPSEC), physical protection, and maintenance of Volcano or Hornet assets. b. Observed and reported enemy action in the named areas of interest (NAIs). c. Confirmed the decision to emplace obstacles. d. Emplaced minefields in the tactical area of interest (TAI) before the enemy arrived. e. Reported the status. f. Recovered and repositioned the Volcano or Hornet assets. g. Established security. h. Emplaced a marking system, if applicable. i. Reported the location of the obstacles to higher HQ according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-4110	Determine Volcano Minefield Logistical Requirements

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)
05-3-0110	Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations. NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission. <p>NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</p> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. <p>NOTE: Air guards are present.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition. c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs). 3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover. c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader. * 4. The element leader develops the situation. a. Initiated fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition. d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces. * 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver. 6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities). * 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ). 8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005)
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-34)
 (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment and receives the directive to perform a minefield clearance. The area is secure and enemy fire is unlikely. The equipment that is assigned to the company is in serviceable condition and has enough demolitions to accomplish the mission. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element removes or destroys all mines. The element enforces standards to minimize the loss of personnel or equipment. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader verifies critical data from a minefield record, if available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified the minefield location. b. Confirmed the number and type of mines (antitank [AT] or antipersonnel [AP]). c. Verified minefield boundaries. d. Verified the number of rows and the location of landmarks. * 2. The element leader organizes the company for clearance operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established a marking party for the minefield boundaries, if not previously marked. b. Designated personnel to operate control points at the rear of the minefield. c. Designated personnel to operate a mine dump, if friendly mines were recovered. d. Established minesweeping teams. * 3. The element leader directs the locating and marking of all mines and lanes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned start points (SPs) and areas to clear to a minimum width of 25 meters and the full depth of the minefield. b. Ensured that mines were marked as soon as they were identified. c. Ensured that mine detector operators were at least 30 meters apart at all times, swept a 1.5-meter path, and were relieved every 20 minutes. d. Deployed the teams in an echelon formation. e. Ensured that lanes were marked as the sweep teams proceeded down them. 4. The element destroys all of the mines in place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Detonated all foreign mines, United States (US) mines with antihandling devices (AHDs), booby traps, and mines that had been in control of enemy forces. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Located and marked the mines. (2) Placed a 1-pound block of explosives primed with detonating cord directly next to each mine. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Used a line or ring main to detonate emplaced charges, either collectively or individually. (4) Ensured detonation did not take place until all personnel had exited the minefield to a safe distance or area. b. Requested assistance from explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, if the foreign mines required recovery by hand. 5. The element proofs the minefield with electronic detectors, mine detection dogs, mine rollers, or other expedient methods to ensure that all the mines are recovered or destroyed. * 6. The element leaders ensure that unit members follow safety considerations. a. Ensured that unit members left metal objects outside the minefield when the use of magnetically influenced fuzes was known or suspected. b. Ensured that sweep-team members wore protective clothing, such as a body armored set, individual countermine (BASIC); helmet; and a flak vest. c. Ensured that unit members did not run in the minefield. d. Advised the members to assume that all of the mines were equipped with AHDs. * 7. The element leader ensures that all of the required reports are sent to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that the status of progress reports was sent according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Ensured that the completion report was sent according to the unit SOP. NOTE: The digital units update the common operational picture (COP) as the minefields are cleared, send reports, and provide updated situational awareness (SA) as required in the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-2084	Direct a Mine Clearing Line Charge Loading Team
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3129	Direct the Removal of a Row Minefield
052-192-3177	Supervise Mine Clearing Line Charge (MCLIC) Operations
052-192-4045	Conduct Route Sweep Operations
052-192-4052	Supervise Operational Minefield Clearing Operations
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-192-4102	Supervise the Removal of Row Minefields
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0112	Emplace a Tactical Minefield
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques (05-3-0043.05-R01A)
 (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. An engineer element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation as part of the breach force. The maneuver force commander has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The engineer element issued an operation order (OPORD) and completed preparations for the operation. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates, proofs, and marks lanes through obstacles to allow the assault force to seize the farside objective. The element creates lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or has observed indirect enemy fire for combat. The support force has provided suppression and obscuration. The breach force commander has secured the reduction site and has directed the engineer unit to reduce the obstacle. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Light engineer elements without an armored vehicle on the table of organization and equipment (TOE) or the modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE) are not authorized to use the M58A3 mine clearing line charge (MCLIC), unless a mechanized engineer element has been identified operational control (OPCON) to the light engineer element.</p> <p>* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD to create a lane through an obstacle by explosive techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units perform collaborative planning and reconnaissance and disseminate orders using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain. b. Reviewed the element TACSOP or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the creation of the lane. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the element TACSOP or SOP. <p>* 2. The element leader determines the obstacle type, location, and dimensions from information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the obstacle (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater). b. Determined the obstacle location and dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and frontage). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, as time permitted, of the obstacle and the surrounding terrain, if the maneuver force did not provide enough details.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle based on the mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) reports. The element—</p> <p>a. Used the MICLIC or bangalore torpedoes for explosive obstacle breaching. NOTE: An alternative course of action is to use direct or indirect weapons fire, however, this requires a high volume of fire and a large expenditure of ammunition. NOTE: The digital units populate the ABCS with obstacle locations and clear lanes and send reports to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>b. Used the Antipersonnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS) to clear a lane 0.6 meters x 45 meters. NOTE: The APOBS is a dismounted, two-soldier carry (team), with a 35-meter standoff for antipersonnel (AP) mines and wire obstacles.</p> <p>c. Used the M1A1 or M1A2 bangalore torpedo to clear a 1- x 15-meter footpath. NOTE: The bangalore torpedo is manually emplaced and requires several soldiers to carry sections. It is not effective against pronged, double-impulsed, or pressure-resistant AP and surface-laid antitank (AT) mines.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the element military decision-making process.</p> <p>a. Determined the lane width. NOTE: The standard widths were 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.</p> <p>b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).</p> <p>c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breach force, time, equipment available, and maneuver scheme.</p> <p>5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle.</p> <p>a. Created lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire. No time standard was established if the obstacle was not covered by fire or if the element conducted breaching under covert conditions.</p> <p>b. Created a lane using a MICLIC.</p> <p>(1) Employed line charges in pairs, unless the limits of the obstacle were well known. NOTE: Most of the enemy obstacles were deep enough to counter the length of the line charge. If the minefield was less than 100 meters and the edge was known, the standoff was 62 meters from the leading edge of the obstacle.</p> <p>(2) Positioned the line charge to allow enough standoff to compensate for the length of the inert cable. NOTE: This ensured that the line charge covered the suspected forward edge of the obstacle. If the obstacle was greater than 100 meters and the edge was unknown or if there was a disabled vehicle, the standoff was 100 meters from the vehicle.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Positioned the second line charge. Directed the alignment with the first line charge, moving 25 meters into the trough of the previously fired charge to ensure an appropriate overlap.</p> <p>c. Created a lane using an APOBS. Positioned the line charge 25 meters from the obstacle to compensate for the length of the inert cable.</p> <p>NOTE: This ensured that the line charge covered the suspected forward edge of the obstacle.</p> <p>d. Created a lane using an M1A1 or M1A2 bangalore torpedo. Ensured that all sections of the torpedo were locked into the coupler.</p> <p>e. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area were warned and that they increased protective level to MOPP4.</p> <p>(2) Equipped the breaching teams with a chemical agent detector kit or an automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that teams did not detonate the chemical mines in place.</p> <p>6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets such as the mine clearing roller (MCR), the M60 Panther, the minifail, or other means. The assault force and the follow-on forces should not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in a cleared lane.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of the lanes. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane.</p> <p>a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes.</p> <p>b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. Placed markers diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape.</p> <p>c. Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. To reduce the lane entrance point. Spaced markers to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes).</p> <p>d. Placed left handrail markers. Placed these markers at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Placed handrail markers at 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes.</p> <p>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, visibility, lane length, and lane path.</p> <p>e. Placed exit markers. Placed markers to the left and right of the reduced lane exit point, and spaced them the same as the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes).</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System screen with the breached lane location, and update overlays to provide SA for maneuver units.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher HQ and the supported maneuver element HQ according to the element TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Reported the method or the material used for marking.</p> <p>b. Reported the location of the final-approach marker and the entrance and exit points.</p> <p>NOTE: Follow-on forces improve and complete marking the breached lane(s) to improve mobility at the breach site.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads
 Two Assault Sections
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Company
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section

TASK: Support an Attack on Fortified Positions (05-3-0044)
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 3-34.2)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver company in a contemporary operating environment with an established command or support relationship. The maneuver company has a mission to attack a fortified position and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. Protective obstacles require a dismounted assault. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon creates lanes through obstacles and destroys fighting positions with demolitions to maintain the momentum of the attack. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures with an emphasis on preparing for an assault of a fortified position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified personnel and equipment requirements to support the company assault of a fortified position. <p>NOTE: An engineer platoon normally requires augmentation with equipment (armored vehicle-launched bridge [AVLB] and mine-clearing line charge [MICLIC]) and personnel (up to two additional squads) to support the assault of a fortified position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identified the required engineer Class V items and requested munitions through the maneuver unit. c. Task-organized the platoon and equipment to support both the breach force and the assault force, with priority to the breach force. d. Coordinated with the company commander to determine the platoon element position in the combat formation. <p>NOTE: The engineer platoon leader must be completely knowledgeable of the maneuver unit field standing operating procedure (FSOP).</p> <p>2. The platoon conducts actions in the assembly area (AA).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) with an emphasis on breaching equipment and demolition charges. b. Linked up with the breach force and assault force commanders. c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with the breach force and assault force elements. <p>3. The platoon maneuvers with the company to the final assault position, and responds or takes appropriate action as directed by the maneuver company commander according to the maneuver unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The platoon leader ensures that the platoon and its equipment are positioned well forward and integrated into the breach force and assault force combat formations.</p> <p>5. The platoon, in coordination with the maneuver company, conducts an obstacle reconnaissance, if time permits.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units request updated intelligence products provided by an unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV), All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products.</p> <p>* 6. The platoon leader advises the maneuver company commander on the best location to bypass or breach obstacles.</p> <p>7. The platoon supports the breach force by reducing protective obstacles along the attack axis.</p> <p>a. Created lanes in enemy-protective obstacles.</p> <p>(1) The platoon leader controlled the MICLIC placement and firing.</p> <p>(2) Created a minimum of one lane per assaulting infantry platoon.</p> <p>(3) Widened assault lanes to enable the company combat vehicles to move to the assault position, if the initial assault was dismounted.</p> <p>b. Marked lanes through the obstacles according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>* 8. The platoon leader reports the locations of lanes and obstacles to the company headquarters (HQ) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with obstacle and cleared-lane locations.</p> <p>9. The platoon supports the assault force in clearing trench lines and knocking out bunkers and fortifications.</p> <p>10. The platoon conducts fire and movement with the maneuver element.</p> <p>11. The engineer squads join assaulting infantry platoons and destroy enemy fighting positions with demolitions, satchel charges, and pole charges.</p> <p>12. The platoon prepares to continue the mission, while consolidating and reorganizing.</p> <p>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Established local security in coordination with the maneuver company.</p> <p>c. Provided engineer support (survivability and countermobility) to the maneuver unit hasty defense.</p> <p>d. Redistributed ammunition and weapons.</p> <p>e. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>f. Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points when the situation permitted.</p> <p>g. Provided situation reports (SITREPs) to the company HQ.</p> <p>*13. The platoon leader, if required, controls the employment of the AVLB and the Wolverine after seizing the enemy position.</p> <p>NOTE: This enables combat vehicles to consolidate on the objective or allow logistical support to be brought forward.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-3-0004	Breach Obstacles
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)
05-3-0043.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques
05-3-0046.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques
05-3-0047.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques
05-3-0209	Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques (05-3-0046.05-R01A)
 (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation in a contemporary operating environment. The element is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates support, breach, and assault forces. The element has the required tools, equipment, and personnel to accomplish the mission. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates and marks lanes through the obstacles to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The element creates lanes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire and/or observed indirect enemy fire. The digital units report locations of the breach lanes by frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to create a lane through an obstacle by using mechanical techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain. b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for creating a lane by using mechanical techniques. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. * 2. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of obstacles from the information provided by the maneuver force and/or an obstacle reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditches, or craters). b. Determined the location and dimensions of obstacles (as a minimum, the depth and frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, if time permitted, of the obstacles and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide enough details. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and the maneuver commander, selects the best mechanical technique to reduce the obstacle based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the mine clearing blade (MCB) to remove mines from a minefield. b. Used the mine clearing roller (MCR) to detect mines and proof a reduced lane. <p>NOTE: It is recommended not to use the MCR as a primary means of reduction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Used the M60 Panther and the minifail to reduce mines from a safe distance without risk to the operator. d. Used the M9 armored combat earthmover (ACE), the armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), and engineer equipment for mechanical obstacle breaching. <p>* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the military decision-making process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the lane width. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The standard width of a footpath for dismounts is 1 meter. (2) The standard width of an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack is 4.5 meters. b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force). c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breaching force, time and equipment available for the breach, and maneuver scheme. <p>5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Created lanes in 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire and/or observed indirect fire. No time standard was established when the obstacle was not covered by fire or when the unit conducted stealth breaching. b. Employed the ACE (when available) for neutralizing the effects of tank ditches, road craters, log cribs, tetrahedrons, dragon teeth, and similar obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Started blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline by means of small cuts. (2) Ensured that cuts and fills were made by the ACE operators until the incline was traversable by maneuver units and the ACE could cross the far bank. c. Employed the AVLB to span destroyed and disabled bridges and other gaps not exceeding 18.3 meters. Ensured that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The crew moved the launcher to within 3 meters of the gap. (2) The AVLB commander directed the driver to launch the bridge with the scissor cylinder. The far end of the bridge did not exceed 61 centimeters above the surface plane. (3) The AVLB commander directed the driver to disconnect the bridge from the launcher (upon completion of the launch). (4) The AVLB commander directed the AVLB launcher to the designated position. (5) The AVLB commander notified the element leader upon completion and relocation. d. Removed rubble with engineer equipment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area had implemented MOPP4. (2) Equipped breaching teams with a chemical-agent detector kit or automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators. (3) Ensured that the teams did not detonate chemical mines in place. <p>6. The element proofs the lanes using mechanical assets, such as an MCR, M60 Panther, minifail, or other means, so that the assault force and follow-on forces do not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in cleared lanes.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of the lanes. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes. b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. These markers were placed diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape. c. Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. This reduced the lane entrance point. The markers were spaced to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes). d. Placed left handrail markers. These markers were placed at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Handrail markers were placed at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and intervals of 5 meters for dismounted lanes. <p>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, visibility, lane length, and lane path.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Placed exit markers. These markers were placed to the left and right of the reduced lane exit point, and they were spaced the same as the lane width (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes). <p>* 8. The element leader reports to engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and supported maneuver unit HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the location of the final approach marker and entrance and exit points. b. Reported the method and the material used for marking. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0004	Breach Obstacles
05-3-0209	Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques (05-3-0047.05-R01A)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation in a contemporary operating environment. The element is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates support, breach, and assault forces. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates and marks lanes through obstacles to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The digital units report the locations of the breach lanes by using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to create a lane through an obstacle by using manual techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and the requirements to create a lane through an obstacle. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the element TACSOP or SOP. * 2. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacle from information provided by the maneuver force or an obstacle reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditches, or craters). b. Determined the location and dimensions of obstacles (as a minimum, the depth and frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, if time permitted, of the obstacle and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide enough details. * 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Based the technique on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report information. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Employed planks, hand-emplaced explosives, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, minefields, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications for manual obstacle breaching.</p> <p>NOTE: Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the military decision-making process of the element.</p> <p>a. Determined the lane width.</p> <p>NOTE: Standard widths are 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.</p> <p>b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).</p> <p>c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breach force, the time and equipment available, and the maneuver scheme.</p> <p>5. The element creates the lane through the obstacle.</p> <p>a. Created lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or if it observed indirect fire.</p> <p>NOTE: No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the element conducts breaching under covert conditions.</p> <p>b. Reduced log, steel beam post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools.</p> <p>c. Created a lane manually by using explosives through a surface-laid minefield.</p> <p>(1) Placed 1-pound, hand-emplaced charges directly next to mines.</p> <p>NOTE: Personnel may prime demolitions and detonate mines in place as they are detected or may connect individual charges into a ring main or line main and simultaneously detonate mines.</p> <p>(2) Cleared suspected or detected trip wires with grapnels or clearly marked them so that personnel placing the explosives did not activate them.</p> <p>d. Created a lane manually by using explosives (buried minefield).</p> <p>(1) Detected mines by the visual method, by probing, or with electronic detectors. Marked mines and destroyed them in place with explosives.</p> <p>NOTE: If trip wires were encountered, they were cleared using grapnel hooks.</p> <p>e. The element reduces the minefield using a grapnel hook.</p> <p>(1) Hand-thrown grapnel hook. The thrower—</p> <p>(a) Used a minimum of 60 meters of light rope attached to the grapnel.</p> <p>(b) Tossed the grapnel and sought cover before the grapnel and the rope touched the ground in case their impact detonated a mine.</p> <p>(c) Moved backward, reaching the end of the excess rope or a covered position, then began to recover the grapnel by pulling the rope toward his position.</p> <p>(2) Weapon-launched grapnel hook (WLGH). The grappler—</p> <p>(a) Used a 150-meter, light rope attached to the grapnel and an M16A1 or M16A2 rifle to launch the grapnel hook.</p> <p>(b) Moved 60 meters (after the WLGH was launched) from the minefield into a prone position and began retrieving the grapnel hook.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Reduced wire obstacles with assault ladders and/or some form of wire cutters.</p> <p>g. Removed rubble with engineer equipment and/or explosives.</p> <p>h. Employed special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area implemented MOPP4.</p> <p>(2) Equipped breaching teams with a chemical-agent detector kit or automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that teams did not detonate chemical mines in place.</p> <p>i. Reduced a tank ditch or other escarpments with pioneer tools if part of a prebreach operation.</p> <p>6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets such as the mine clearing roller (MCR), the M60/M1 Panther, the minifail, or other means so that the assault force and follow-on forces do not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in cleared lanes.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of lanes. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane.</p> <p>a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes.</p> <p>b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. Placed the markers diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape.</p> <p>c. Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. This reduced the lane's entrance point. Spaced the markers to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes).</p> <p>d. Placed left handrail markers. These markers were placed at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Placed the handrail markers at 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes.</p> <p>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, the visibility, the lane length, and the lane path.</p> <p>e. Placed exit markers. Placed these markers to the left and right of the reduced lane's exit point, and they were spaced the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes).</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System screen with the location of the breached location and update overlays to provide situational awareness (SA) for maneuver units.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and the supported maneuver element HQ according to the element TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Reported the location of the final approach marker and entrance and exit points.</p> <p>b. Reported the method or material used for marking.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0043.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield (05-3-0110)
 (FM 90-7) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 20-32)
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036)
 (STANAG 2123) (TM 9-1345-209-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield in support of a maneuver element. The maneuver commander has determined the location of the minefield. The maneuver unit will provide security. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield, tied to existing obstacles or terrain, to block, channel, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. Positions the MOPMS dispensers. Command and control data (CCD) is entered and the remote-control unit (RCU) is prepared to deploy the mines. The fratricide fence is installed. The digital units report obstacle locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means and submit the appropriate reports to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to emplace a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield.</p> <p>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to conduct initial map reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield.</p> <p>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</p> <p>2. The element performs a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the final location was tied to the existing obstacles or terrain.</p> <p>c. Determined the approximate locations for fences.</p> <p>d. Selected the movement routes.</p> <p>e. Established local security.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader calculates the man-hours and logistical requirements.</p> <p>a. Calculated the number of MOPMS dispensers.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: For planning factors for a MOPMS disrupt minefield, use four MOPMS dispensers for a front of 280 meters and a depth of 70 meters. For a MOPMS fix minefield, use five MOPMS dispensers for a front of 280 meters and a depth of 115 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material. c. Calculated the number of man-hours. d. Calculated the number of trips to transport the materials. <p>4. The element draws MOPMS dispensers and fence materials.</p> <p>* 5. The element installs one of the following MOPMS minefield:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated firing points and identified the location of the first MOPMS dispenser. b. Laid out and marked locations to place the MOPMS dispensers for a disrupt minefield. <p>NOTE: Dispenser measurements are center to center.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Marked the first dispenser location toward the enemy-side left. (2) Marked the second dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the first dispenser. (3) Marked the third dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the second dispenser. (4) Marked the fourth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the third dispenser. <p>c. Laid out and marked locations to place the MOPMS dispensers for a fixed minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Marked the first dispenser location toward the enemy-side left. (2) Marked the second dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the first dispenser. (3) Marked the third dispenser location 70 meters to the rear of the second dispenser and 70 meters to the right of dispenser number one. (4) Marked the fourth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the third dispenser. (5) Marked the fifth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the fourth dispenser. <p>d. Constructed the fratricide fence after the first dispenser location was marked.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that the fence was 55 meters from the extreme left, right, and front dispensers. (2) Ensured that the fence was 20 meters from the extreme rear dispenser. <p>NOTE: Measurements are taken from the center of the dispenser.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Left a footpath-size opening and enough wire to close the opening. <p>e. Placed dispensers on the marked locations, arrow oriented toward the enemy.</p> <p>6. All element members, except the security team, return to the firing point.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader accounts for all personnel at the firing point.</p> <p>8. Identifies team members ARM the dispenser in one of the following ways and ensure that each dispenser is armed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Entered the CCD into each dispenser with the RCU. b. Connected the firing wire to each dispenser and turned the SAFE/ARM knob to ARM. <p>9. The team members return to the firing point, closing the opening in the wire.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*10. The element leader conducts obstacle turnover according to obstacle folder.</p> <p>a. Issued the group identification code.</p> <p>b. Issued a blasting machine, if the overwatching unit did not have one available.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits at least four copies of a completed minefield record according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</p> <p>a. Signed the form.</p> <p>b. Submitted a copy of the completed form to the overwatch unit and higher headquarters (HQ) or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible.</p> <p>c. Submitted a copy of the completed form to the unit central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority.</p> <p>*12. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually an oral report, to the authorizing commander.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) system with the location of the minefield, providing the current SA and COP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2030	Operate a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-2031	Operate the Remote Control Unit (RCU) for the Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield
052-192-4112	Determine Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield Logistical Requirements

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: Digital units send alert messaging and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and/or send reports using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>2. Command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert units.</p> <p>a. Notified all elements. If the element was—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Unable to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared mines from positions through detonation and departed as soon as feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. <p>b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation and included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.</p> <p>c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. Vehicle commanders check the immediate area and element personnel remove any mines and trip wires from vehicles. Element personnel—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires. b. Removed trip wires from soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device. <p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the rest of the unit was out of the minefield. <p>* 4. Element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. Element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used visual means to locate mines and marked the vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The lanes were marked according to the tactical situation and threat; however, marked areas also allowed personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles. b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes (using a grapnel hook or other means) as directed by the company commander. Detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage. <p>* 6. Vehicle commanders direct the personnel that are ground-guiding vehicles out of the minefield.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command. b. Ensured that any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire was placed onto vehicles. c. Ensured that individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed them to exit the minefield on their own. <p>7. Company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes. b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove vehicles or equipment from the minefield. c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred. d. Placed sandbags near mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage. e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance. f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground. <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow mission accomplishment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cleared the communication lanes between positions. b. Marked the communication lanes between positions. c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from the detonation. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Breaching Operations (05-3-0114)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)
 (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer company is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness and daylight, under all weather conditions. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that has an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company creates lanes through obstacles, as directed by the TF commander, to maintain the momentum of the attack. Friendly forces sustain no casualties while using the marked lanes. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts the military decision-making process (MDMP) with an emphasis on preparing for breaching operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed and task-organized platoons to breach obstacles in support of the attack. b. Rehearsed the mission with the company leaders. c. Ensured that each element understood its mission. d. Ensured that the equipment was checked for serviceability and that the company had the items specified in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) as well as those items required for the specific mission. <p>NOTE: To support a deliberate attack, an engineer company may require augmentation with the following additional equipment and personnel: an armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), mine clearing line charges (MICLICs), and up to two additional platoons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Identified engineer-required Class V munitions. f. Requested the munitions through the maneuver unit. g. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach and assault forces. Priority went to the breach force. h. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in combat formation. <p>NOTE: The engineer company leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit TACSOP.</p> <p>2. The company performs actions in the assembly area (AA).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed precombat checks (PCCs) with special emphasis on the breaching equipment.</p> <p>b. Established a linkup with the breach and assault force commanders.</p> <p>c. Performed detailed rehearsals with the breach and assault force elements.</p> <p>3. The company moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacles.</p> <p>4. The company, as directed by the maneuver commander, takes action according to the maneuver unit TACSOP.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander positions the subordinate elements well forward and integrates them into the breach and assault force combat formations. The commander anticipates locations or events where engineer support is essential.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).</p> <p>7. The company supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>* 8. The company commander directs engineer platoons to conduct an enemy obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or breach the obstacle(s).</p> <p>10. The company supports breach and assault forces. Priority goes to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>*11. The company commander directs the engineer elements supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The elements are prepared to support mounted and dismounted attacks.</p> <p>a. Ensured that there was at least one lane per assaulting element or two lanes per TF.</p> <p>b. Created a lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel or equipment was exposed to direct or observed indirect fire.</p> <p>NOTE: The 10-minute time limit refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle.</p> <p>c. Conducted breaching operations by stealth or at a location where the unit was not under enemy fire. No time standard was established.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the breach site and lane(s) to provide current situational awareness.</p> <p>*12. The company commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p>13. The company marks lanes according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>*14. The company commander reports lane locations according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>15. The company prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>*16. The company commander reports lane or obstacle locations to the higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle handoff.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*18. The company commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or the obstacle and to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit. The lane or the obstacle is expediently marked, and the marking method is explained to the follow-on engineer unit.		
19. The company supports the maneuver unit assault on the objective.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-194-4007	Execute a Complex Obstacle Breach
052-226-1013	Retrieve the Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB): Operator

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0043.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques
05-3-0046.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Mechanical Techniques
05-3-0047.05-R01A	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0116)
 (FM 20-32) (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, given an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that the element emplaced within the assigned sector. Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1R of the minefield is available. Personnel and required equipment is available to assist in the removal of the minefield. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are rendered safe and are removed or accounted for without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all mines are disarmed and removed. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield. NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond. The security force— a. Employed smoke on the farside to conceal mine removal, if necessary. b. Remained in position, overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader determines the best method for removing the mines. a. Directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines, if the minefield was under constant observation from the time it was laid and was not tampered with. Used DA Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members on the location and the types of mines to be removed. b. Used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members on the location and the types of mines to be removed, if the minefield was not under constant observation and may have been tampered with or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.</p> <p>5. The removal team takes the safeties and removes the mines within the minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to B1 using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R. The team then moves from B1 to the mine and removes the mine. If B1 is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to B2 using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth at B2 to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at A1, B1, A2, and B2 are necessary because its safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30 meters between removal personnel. <p>NOTE: Removal personnel do not run in the minefield, and only move around in cleared areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it. c. Checked the sides and bottoms of mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found. <p>NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Turned the arming dials to SAFE or UNARMED, if applicable. e. Removed the screw type fuze cap, then removed the screw type fuze. f. Removed the shipping plug/dust cover, removed the entire assembly, and replaced the shipping plug/dust cover (fuze assembly). g. Replaced all pins, clips, and other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground. h. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on SAFE. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Lifted the mine directly from the hole after rendering it safe, if it had been put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it. (2) Attached a 60-meter-long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole, if the mine had not been kept in sight. i. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed. <p>6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader confirms the safety of the mines and accounts for the number and types of the mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, ensure that it was caused by the land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery are generally elongated.</p> <p>8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use.</p> <p>NOTE: This is done only after the element leader confirms that each mine is disarmed and safe.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Repacked the mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use. b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP. <p>9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use.</p> <p>*10. The element leader submits a report of change to higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.</p> <p>*11. The element leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units update the digital overlay to provide current SA.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines and Booby Trap Indicators by Visual Means
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3211	Direct the Removal of a Hasty Row Protective Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-2-0111	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles (05-3-0204)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-102) (STANAG 2123)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating in a contemporary operating environment. The element leader is issued an obstacle folder and directed to emplace the obstacle in support of the unit mission. The element has all the required personnel and materials to complete the mission. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares prechamber shafts and beam post obstacles on bridges in compliance with the obstacle folder. The element completes a three-shaft prechamber obstacle within 90 minutes. The squad completes a 54-beam post obstacle within 4 hours. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element prepares a prechamber shaft according to the standards or criteria outlined in the obstacle folder.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader obtained the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader obtains the special tools (T-handle wrenches, shaft cover lifting hooks, and loading poles) listed in the obstacle folder. The element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Opened the prechamber shaft nearest the enemy first. b. Loaded each prechamber shaft with 25-kilogram DM41 charges (4 per meter of shaft depth). <p>NOTE: The DM41 charge is designed to fit European prechamber shafts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Dual-primed the last charge in each shaft. d. Installed the firing system by using existing plastic lines to pull the branch lines through the conduit. e. Laid ring mains along the side of the road. <p>* 4. The element leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the obstacle locations and update the common operational picture (COP), providing situational awareness (SA) to friendly units according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The element completes a three-shaft system within 90 minutes.</p> <p>6. The element prepares a beam post obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the required steel I beams from supply. b. Located the special tools (T-handle wrenches and lifting hooks) identified in the folder. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The element opens the shaft covers and removes the crossbar beginning with the enemy row.</p> <p>8. A section carries an I beam and lowers it into the shaft, enemy row first. NOTE: The element may improve the enemy-side double row by placing two rolls of concertina, one on top of the other, over each row of beams. It positions a camouflage net over the entire double row.</p> <p>9. The element completes three double rows 12 meters wide (54 I beams) in 4 hours and reports the intermediate status and completion to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>*10. The element leader completes the obstacle folder and submits it to the platoon leader.</p> <p>11. The element draws the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.</p> <p>12. The element places charges as directed in the obstacle folder and prepares the firing systems. If the charges are dual-primed, the crew ensures that each system is independent.</p> <p>13. The element prepares the demolition target. a. Prepared the demolition target to state 1, if it was a preliminary target. b. Advised higher HQ that it was ready to execute the target. NOTE: If permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed following the procedures outlined in Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2123.</p> <p>*14. The element leader, following procedures in the obstacle folder, may turn over the target to a demolition firing party.</p> <p>*15. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ. NOTE: The element leader may improve the obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder; for example, laying mines. NOTE: The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with obstacle locations according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>*16. The element leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader. NOTE: The digital units submit reports and update the SA using digital means.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0516	Emplace Situational Obstacles
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction. b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive. c. Considered whether to use an electric or nonelectric firing system. d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The element members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the plan of the element leader.		
* 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Direct Placement of Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-0303)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)
 (FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to construct a wire obstacle at an 8-digit grid location to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. The element has the materials and personnel available to construct the wire obstacle. The wire obstacle may be emplaced as a tactical or protective obstacle. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces the obstacle to standard according to higher headquarters (HQ) requirements (tactical [disrupt, fix, turn, or block] or protective) and the time line specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The element sites and constructs the obstacle, performs an obstacle turnover, and reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit HQ. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The element updates overlays and provides appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the applicable standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to construct a wire obstacle to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. NOTE: Digital units send orders and reports and perform a map reconnaissance using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or TACSOP. c. Conducted troop-leading procedures. d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Conducted a risk management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit SOP or TACSOP. f. Requested barrier materials based on the type of wire obstacle to be installed. <p>* 2. The element leader prepares to construct a wire obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoitered the site to consider needed security, potential actions on contact, and the accessibility of materials. b. Organized the work party. <p>* 3. The element leader and overwatch units site the obstacle as part of the overwatch unit engagement area (EA) development process. NOTE: Cover the obstacle with direct and/or indirect fire.</p> <p>4. The element constructs the wire obstacle.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Digital units report obstacle completion and locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and reporting to higher HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Used triple-standard concertina.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side. (2) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. <p>NOTE: One meter equals 1.3 paces.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Staggered the rear row. (4) Secured the bottom rolls with horizontal wire on both the enemy side and the friendly side. (5) Anchored the horizontal wire to the anchor (short) pickets, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from the end of the long pickets. (6) Secured the top roll, the horizontal wire, and the bottom roll on the friendly side with wire ties midway between pickets. (7) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour per 100 meters during daylight or 1.5 squad hours per 100 meters in darkness. <p>b. Prepared the knife rest.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prepared a knife rest 3 to 5 meters long. (2) Secured the knife rest to the ground 3 to 5 meters between the cross members with a minimum height of 1.2 meters and tightly lashed it together. (3) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour per knife rest during daylight or 1.5 squad hours per knife rest in darkness. <p>c. Prepared a double-apron, 4-2 pace fence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Laid the fence centerline. (2) Spaced the long pickets at 3-meter (4-pace) intervals. (3) Spaced anchor pickets 1.5 meters (2 paces) in each direction away from the centerline and midway between the long pickets. (4) Installed all 12 wires working from the enemy side to the friendly side. <p>NOTE: No antitank mines should be placed in the fence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Used the correct wire ties and ensured that all of the wires were tight. (6) Completed construction within the time standard of 3 squad hours per 100 meters during daylight or 4.5 squad hours per 100 meters in darkness. <p>d. Constructed an 11-row, antivehicular wire obstacle.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Spaced pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. (2) Placed the concertina wire over the long pickets and placed a log with a diameter of 20 centimeters between the 5th and 6th rows. (3) Anchored the horizontal wires to the anchor stakes, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from each end of the concertina. (4) Ensured that the obstacle was no less than 10 meters (11 rows) deep. (5) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour during daylight or 2 squad hours in darkness. <p>NOTE: The time standard given is for entanglements that are 15 meters wide and 10 meters (11 rows) deep.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader ensures that the wire obstacle meets the commander's intent and requirements.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader submits initiation reports, status updates, and completion reports to higher HQ according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader conducts an obstacle turnover to the overwatch unit according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Refer to field manuals (FMs) for information on how to prepare an obstacle folder for turnover.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2101	Direct Construction of Wire Entanglements
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-195-3067	Determine Logistical Requirements for Wire Obstacles

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Six Engineer Squads
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-0304)
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is supporting a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MCPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs vehicle fighting positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapons system. The dimensions of the positions and the time required for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of the positions.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader uses the unit planning factors to estimate the completion time based on the maneuver unit vehicles and the positions required.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes construction based on directives from the maneuver commander.</p> <p>4. The element constructs positions according to the commander's priorities.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade.</p> <p>a. Prepared hasty positions.</p> <p>(1) Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provide limited concealment.</p> <p>(a) Excavated and built-up a frontal parapet as high as practical (without interfering with the vehicle weapons system).</p> <p>(b) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the sides of the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions as time permitted.</p> <p>b. Prepared deliberate positions to protect the vehicles from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (for example, the sabot).</p> <p>NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles.</p> <p>(1) Constructed positions in the following four parts:</p> <p>(a) Hull defilade.</p> <p>(b) Concealed access ramp or route.</p> <p>(c) Hiding location.</p> <p>(d) Turret defilade.</p> <p>(2) Adjusted position depths to those listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain; for example, the position depth on a reverse slope will not be as great as on level ground.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Ensured that positions suited the vehicle requirements by driving the vehicles into position at various stages of construction. d. Flattened out or hauled away the spoil. * 5. The element leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: The digital units have the ability to send and receive reports using digital means and populate the system with friendly positions according to the SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0311	Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-0305)
 (FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment in support of a maneuver unit establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs vehicle positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades. NOTE: The digital units have situational awareness (SA) provided by the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System, identifying friendly positions. The stale settings are set according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>* 2. The element leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver unit vehicles requiring positions. NOTE: See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.</p> <p>4. The element constructs vehicle protective positions. a. Prepared parapet positions for field artillery or air defense artillery (ADA) weapons. (1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation and built it low enough to allow for direct howitzer fire or did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons. (2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather. (3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting. (4) Ensured that positions were the correct length, width, depth, and parapet thickness. NOTE: See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions. b. Prepared deep-cut vehicle protective positions for the support vehicles. (1) Positioned the vehicles so that the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the top of the surrounding wall.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Prepared the positions, opened on both ends, with an optional rear wall. (3) Placed camouflage netting across the top of the position. (4) Ensured that positions were the correct length, width, and depth according to FM 5-103. * 5. The element leader reports intermediate status and mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units send reports using FM or digital means, the FBCB2 System, or the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct a Tank Ditch (05-3-0306)
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The squad/crew is in a contemporary operating environment and is supporting a maneuver unit establishing a defense. The obstacle plan requires construction of a tank ditch as part of a linear obstacle system. The maneuver unit occupies defensive positions overlooking an ideal engagement area. The unit has all organic equipment. The maneuver commander has selected the site in consultation with the task force (TF) engineer. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The crew constructs a tank ditch tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block, turn, fix, or disrupt the enemy. The tank ditch blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT) for 2 minutes. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP), overlays, and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The crew leader coordinates with the maneuver commander for the location of the tank ditch to support the maneuver scheme, enhance antitank (AT) fire, and establish jobsite security. * 2. The crew leader conducts a reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the tank ditch was within the maximum effective range of AT firing positions. b. Sited the tank ditch so that the ends of the ditch tied into the existing obstacles. c. Determined the best method for digging according to the appropriate field manual. * 3. The crew leader briefs the crew on routes, security, action on contact, and noise and light discipline. 4. The crew performs vehicle maintenance. * 5. The crew leader supervises tank ditch construction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked the ditch location. b. Briefed the operators on the type of tank ditch, the start and end points, the depth of the ditch, and the enemy and friendly sides of the ditch. 6. Operators construct a rectangular tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 3.3 meters wide, placing the berm on the friendly side of the ditch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the T-push method with a dozer-dozer, dozer-loader, dozer and armored combat earthmover (ACE), ACE-ACE, or ACE-loader team configuration. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Used the tandem method with a scraper-scraper, scraper-ACE, or scraper-dozer team configuration. c. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards according to the appropriate field manual. 7. Operators construct a triangular tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 4 meters wide, spreading the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch. a. Used the T-push method. See performance measure 6a. b. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards. 8. Operators construct a sidehill cut tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 4.5 to 6 meters wide, spreading the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch. a. Used the T-push method. See performance measure 6a. b. Used the one-dozer or ACE method. c. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards. * 9. The crew leader reports the mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: Locations of tank ditches are plotted on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to provide SA to maneuver units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-227-3121	Direct Construction of a Rectangular Tank Ditch
052-227-3122	Direct Construction of a V-Type Ditch
052-254-1036	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Crawler Tractor

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Obstacle Section
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct a Log Obstacle (05-3-0307)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-102)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and the maneuver commander orders the construction of log obstacles to support the defensive scheme. Intelligence reports indicate adequate standing timber is onsite. A small emplacement excavator (SEE) or a front-end loader is available, and the platoon provides local job security. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs a log obstacle tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block or delay the enemy. Obstacles stop or delay an enemy main battle tank (MBT). The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP), overlays, and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader or the platoon sergeant conducts a ground reconnaissance with the squad leaders if possible. NOTE: The digital units send orders and reports and perform map reconnaissance using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the dispersion areas. b. Identified routes to and from the site. c. Identified the availability and location of materials. d. Identified the overwatch positions. <p>NOTE: The digital units conduct the above performance measures using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.</p> <p>2. The platoon constructs log hurdles. NOTE: The digital units report the completion of obstacles and their locations by populating the FBCB2 and reporting to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader selects a site where log hurdles cannot be readily bypassed. He sites the hurdles on the steepest part of a slope, as near as possible to the top.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader selects three 25-centimeter-diameter logs or one 45-centimeter-diameter log for each hurdle. The platoon—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Staked the logs firmly in place across a roadway or on the ground of a bypass route. b. Lashed the logs to the securing stakes, placing the stakes no more than 1.5 meters apart. c. Buried the stakes at least 60 centimeters in the ground with 60 centimeters remaining aboveground. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Constructed each log hurdle within one squad hour. * 5. The element leader sends the progress completion reports to higher HQ by secure means. * 6. The element leader determines the log crib to construct and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be readily bypassed. The platoon— a. Constructed the rectangular log crib with a 6-meter front, facing one corner of the triangular log crib towards the enemy. b. Used only logs that were at least 20 centimeters in diameter. * 7. The element leader ensures that all vertical logs are cut about 3 meters long and emplaced 1.5 meters below the ground. The platoon— a. Placed the vertical logs 1.8 meters apart. b. Secured the logs together and filled the center with earth taken from the enemy side of the obstacle. c. Constructed the log crib within 8 platoon hours. d. Constructed a log post obstacle. * 8. The element leader determines the length and depth of the log post obstacle and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be easily bypassed. The platoon— a. Constructed the log post obstacle that was at least four rows, had an irregular spacing of 1 to 2 meters between posts, had an irregular height of 75 to 120 centimeters, was 1.5 meters underground, and was at least 40 centimeters in diameter. b. Attached wire to the log posts in an irregular pattern. * 9. The element leader determines the work rate based on the length of the front and available personnel and equipment (such as a pile driver, auger, or hand tools). 10. The platoon constructs the log post obstacle within plus 10 percent of the time calculated in step 9. *11. The element leader sends progress completion reports to higher HQ by secure means.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Platoon)
05-3-0411.05-R01A	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms (05-3-0311)
 (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in a contemporary operating environment and is directed to construct protective earthen walls and berms. Organic tools and equipment are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs earthen walls and berms, providing protection against direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the earthen walls and berms are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of walls and berms.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units can use the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) to conduct collaborative planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advised the commander on the site selection and walls or berms that would satisfy various weather, topographical, tactical, and other military requirements. b. Increased the effectiveness of berms and walls by locating them in adequately defended areas. c. Integrated walls and berms with other forms of protection, such as dispersion, concealment, and adjacent fighting positions. d. Constructed the inside area large enough to allow unit members to perform operational duties. e. Constructed the wall and berm heights as close to the height of the protected equipment as possible. <p>2. The element constructs berms to withstand indirect-fire blasts and fragmentation from medium artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed berms entirely of compacted earth fill. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that the sides had a 1:1 slope and were constantly maintained. (2) Used a waterproof covering or sandbags to stabilize the wall. b. Ensured that berms with revetments had a 1:1 slope, with the revetment located on the inside of the wall as close as possible to the protected equipment. <p>3. The platoon constructs walls to withstand indirect-fire blasts and fragmentation from small artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed a freestanding soil cement wall with a slope of 1:10. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Used a mixture of 1 part portland cement (by weight) to 10 parts soil (by weight).</p> <p>(2) Used special equipment to construct forms and prepare the soil cement mixture (cement mixers, wood tools, and hand tools).</p> <p>b. Ensured that the construction of a soil bin wall was at least 30 centimeters thick and contained side revetments that were made from logs, dimensional timber, plywood, or corrugated metal.</p> <p>4. The element constructs a plywood portable wall to withstand mortar shell fragments impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <p>a. Braced both ends of each 2.8-meter wall section with 10-centimeter-long guy cables to prevent it from being blown over by the blast wave.</p> <p>b. Filled the completed wall with a suitable soil material (sand, if possible) and waterproofed the top.</p> <p>5. The element constructs walls and berms in the specified time. The times to construct walls and berms that are 1.5 meters high and 3 meters long should be as follows:</p> <p>a. Constructed a berm: 3 man-hours.</p> <p>b. Constructed a berm with revetment: 20 man-hours.</p> <p>c. Constructed a soil cement wall: 25 man-hours.</p> <p>d. Constructed a soil bin wall with revetment: 35 man-hours.</p> <p>e. Constructed a plywood portable wall: 5 man-hours.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader sends intermediate status and completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>NOTE: The emplacing unit submits reports and locations using FM or digital means.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units plot locations of obstacles on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to provide SA to friendly units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scrapper Operations

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-0312)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in a contemporary operating environment and is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The element has organic hand tools, a bulldozer, a high-mobility engineer escalator (HMEE), a deployable universal combat earthmover (DEUCE), and a crane. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs bunkers and shelters, providing protection from direct or indirect fire and the weather as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. They update the common operational picture (COP) to provide current situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of bunkers and shelters. NOTE: Digital units can use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to conduct collaborative planning. a. Used natural shelters, such as caves, mines, and tunnels when possible. b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors. NOTE: An underground bunker or shelter provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment. NOTE: A cut-and-cover bunker or shelter requires partial excavation and backfill. NOTE: An aboveground bunker or shelter can be constructed quickly and requires less labor. Aboveground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or when the water table is excessively high. c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible. d. Prepared construction time estimates using the man-hours found in the applicable FM. e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans from the applicable FM. f. Constructed shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.</p> <p>2. The element constructs bunkers and shelters. NOTE: The digital units report completion of obstacles and locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and reporting to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter.</p> <p>b. Sloped the floor at least 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance.</p> <p>c. Hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside, if lights were used inside.</p> <p>d. Checked cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.</p> <p>e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1 cubic foot per minute in bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. Used stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation.</p> <p>NOTE: This condition was met when light drapes covering vents were moved by incoming air.</p> <p>f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast-resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through.</p> <p>g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection.</p> <p>(1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the aboveground cavity wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(3) The steel framed, fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover.</p> <p>(4) The hardened frame, fabric shelters, concrete arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover.</p> <p>h. Camouflaged and concealed all shelters.</p> <p>3. The platoon improves bunkers or shelters as time permits by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader reports the construction status and mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>NOTE: The emplacing unit submits reports and locations using FM or digital means. The digital units plot the locations of earth walls and berms on the FBCB2 to provide SA to friendly units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3060	Direct Construction of Combat Bunkers and Shelters

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare an Expedient Ford (05-3-0603)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) to prepare an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps less than or equal to 50 meters are prepared in 1 hour. Gaps more than 50 meters are prepared in 2 hours. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The platoon prepares approaches to the ford.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed slope approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles. b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side of, and not in, the stream. <p>2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Filled the short, deep gaps with rock or gravel. b. Prepared the soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel. c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter. <p>3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that poles were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford. b. Ensured that poles were at least 1.5 meters above the water level. <p>* 4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the crossing site and send reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0403	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct Combat Roads/Trails (05-3-0705)
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct a combat trail or road. The order specifies the start and end points, the general route location, lane requirements, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and completion time. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs the combat road or trail, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed. The combat road or trail is constructed no later than the time prescribed in the OPORD. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures. * 2. The element leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, materials, and a trafficability test set. * 3. The element leader or platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security. 4. The platoon constructs a combat trail. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the start and end points as specified in the order and followed the general route. b. Cleared and grubbed the route as required by removing trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and any other obstacle impeding smooth vehicle movement, to the depth of the topsoil. c. Ensured that the trail was one lane wide or 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter. d. Ensured that route grades did not exceed the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades. e. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. The expedient surface depends on the available materials. NOTE: Refer to the supporting products for pertinent field manuals (FMs). 5. The platoon constructs a combat road. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established start and end points as specified in the OPORD and followed the general route. b. Cleared and grubbed the route by removing trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and any other obstacle to the depth of the topsoil. c. Ensured that the road width was according to the mission directive. Ensured that— 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) A one-lane road was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter. (2) A two-lane road was 12 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</p> <p>d. Ensured that route grades did not exceed the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades.</p> <p>e. Used the trafficability test set and ensured that the trafficability rating cone index met or exceeded the vehicle cone index according to the appropriate field manual.</p> <p>f. Ensured that flowing water did not interfere with the traffic flow by constructing expedient fords or culverts to carry the water across/under the road.</p> <p>(1) Constructed an expedient ford.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that slopes for approaches were no greater than 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</p> <p>(b) Removed material from the banks to the side of the approach and ensured that it was not deposited in the stream.</p> <p>(2) Prepared the bottom of the ford.</p> <p>(a) Filled short, deep gaps with rock or gravel.</p> <p>(b) Prepared soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel.</p> <p>(c) Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</p> <p>(3) Marked the edges of the ford. Ensured that the poles extended at least 1.5 meters above the water level and were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford.</p> <p>(4) Assembled and installed culverts.</p> <p>(5) Constructed roadside ditches, as required.</p> <p>g. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation.</p> <p>NOTE: The expedient surface depends on the available materials.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location of crossing sites and road status according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-2015	Direct Placement of Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0700	Perform Combat Construction Survey Operations
05-3-0209	Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions
05-3-0401.05-R01A	Support a Route Classification
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification
05-3-0710	Assemble and Install Culverts
05-3-0762	Conduct Clearing, Grubbing, and Stripping Operations
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units submit reports and locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4. (2) If the unit was working alone or was in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2. b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance. <p>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). <p>* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a covered and concealed position. b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire. c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces. <p>3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site. b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified avenues of approach. b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter. c. Identified crew-served weapons positions. d. Established withdrawal routes. e. Identified dismounted personnel positions. f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions. g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles. h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time. i. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provided early warning and close-in security. (2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants. (3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP. (4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved. (5) Maintained communications with the command post. j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit. (2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the elements position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy. (3) Did not place the alarm in a depression. (4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted. k. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designated primary fighting positions. (2) Designated alternate fighting positions. (3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. <p>NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ. m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process. <p>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.</p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Kept individual weapons within close reach. b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Maintained camouflage procedures. d. Maintained the directed MOPP level. e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ. <p>NOTE: Digital units send reports and update the COP using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Two Assault Sections
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section

TASK: Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield (05-3-2010)
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-10)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7) (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield in a contemporary operating environment. The maneuver commander has determined the location, type, and composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver commander will provide the security element. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a standardized tactical row minefield tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The element submits reports and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. The element completes the minefield within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain. b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted a risk management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. 2. The element conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by direct or observed indirect fire. b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing obstacles. c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps. d. Selected movement routes. e. Established local security. * 3. The element leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements (if standard-row minefield designs are not used) and arranges for the mines to be drawn from supply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculated the number of mines. b. Calculated the number of rows (depending on the effect). c. Calculated the number of AHDs. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Calculated the number of man-hours needed to install the minefield. e. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material. f. Calculated the number of trips needed to transport the mines.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader reports, by secure means, to higher headquarters (HQ) or the supported maneuver unit HQ of the intention to lay mines (if required).</p> <p>* 5. The element leader organizes the element into four parties: siting and recording, laying, marking, and mine dump. a. Organized the siting and recording party. b. Organized the laying party. c. Organized the marking party. d. Organized the mine-dump party.</p> <p>6. The element assembles all equipment and material to emplace the minefield during daylight or with limited visibility.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit HQ that the element has initiated emplacement. The report includes the time, location, and target number.</p> <p>8. The element establishes a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield. a. Selected a level site with adequate access for vehicles. b. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart and 50 meters behind the minefield. Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) was moved accordingly, as needed. c. Uncrated and stacked the antitank (AT) mines. d. Removed the lids on the remaining mine crates, but did not remove additional mines from the crates. e. Placed the fuzes and the detonators in separate boxes.</p> <p>9. The siting and recording party performs the following operations: a. Selected landmark 1 and sited the left or right boundary fence and the start row markers. b. Recorded the distances and the azimuths used in preparing the minefield record. c. Proceeded across the irregular outer edge (IOE) and established I1, I1E, I2, I2E, and so on until reaching the end. d. Proceeded down the right or left boundary fence and emplaced the A1 start row marker. Proceeded from A1 to A2 then placed the intermediate markers, as needed, and ended with the end row marker at A2. e. Designated the minefield lanes and at least three rows. f. Repeated the procedure in performance measure 10d to emplace B1 to B2, C1 to C2, and so on until all of the required control measures were emplaced g. Established landmark 2 and the left or right rear fence.</p> <p>10. The marking party emplaces the fence post, wire, and marking signs.</p> <p>11. The laying party performs the following operations: a. Assembled a guide for mine spacing. b. Proceeded down the row in the vehicle following the shotgun or track commander (TC) or the intermediate row markers. c. Transferred the mines from the vehicle and carefully laid them on the ground. d. Fuzed the mines. e. Armed the mines and recovered the row markers.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
12. The marking party installs the minefield fence. *13. The element leader completes a minefield record with the required information. *14. The element leader submits a minimum of four copies of a completed minefield record. a. Reviewed the minefield record for correctness, ensured that the form was marked with the correct classification, and signed the form. NOTE: The minefield record should be marked with one of the following classifications: SECRET; NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET; SECRET-Republic of Korea, United States (ROKUS); or SAMPLE. b. Submitted a copy of the completed minefield record to the overwatch unit and higher HQ, or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible. c. Submitted a copy of the completed minefield record to the unit central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority. *15. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually orally, to the authorizing commander and then immediately submits a completed minefield record.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1105	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M624 Fuze
052-192-1106	Remove an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine With the M624 Fuze
052-192-1107	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1109	Install an M19 Antitank (AT) Mine
052-192-1117	Install an M21 Antitank (AT) Mine

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011)
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)
 (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to emplace a scatterable minefield in support of a maneuver unit. The maneuver commander has provided the intent, type, location, composition and means of delivery (air or ground). The security element has been coordinated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a tactical minefield (tied to existing or reinforced obstacles) to disrupt, turn, fix, or block to channel, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. The digital units submit reports and locations of obstacles via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and standardization agreements (STANAGs). Department of the Army (DA) forms are completed and submitted according to the STANAG. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information from the All Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ) before the mission. Nondigital units request information from the higher HQ Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</p> <p>* 1. The element leader prepares a plan for the emplacement of a Volcano minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit. b. Designated a tow vehicle. c. Conducted a thorough map, aerial, or ground reconnaissance for the location of the minefield and routes (primary and alternate). d. Issued the intent of the minefield. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Disrupt. (2) Fix. (3) Turn. (4) Block. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures. <p>* 2. The element leader and the reconnaissance element verify the minefield location, confirm the intent (as appropriate for the location), and tie into existing terrain.</p> <p>* 3. The element reconnoiters the start and end points of the minefield.</p> <p>4. The element identifies the centerline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked the disrupt or fix Volcano minefield. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point was reached (277 meters for ground Volcano and 278 meters air Volcano).</p> <p>b. Marked the turn or block Volcano minefield.</p> <p>(1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path.</p> <p>NOTE: Turn and block Volcano minefields require two strip centerlines and are separated by at least 320 meters for both ground and air delivery to achieve step 4b(2).</p> <p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point is reached (555 meters for ground Volcano and 557 meters for air Volcano).</p> <p>5. The element marks the perimeter of the Volcano minefield(s) being deployed.</p> <p>NOTE: When minefields are behind the forward line of own troops (FLOT) (in the main battle or rear area), mark the minefield on all four sides. Minefields forward of the FLOT generally are not marked.</p> <p>a. Marked a safety zone with marking material 40 meters from the start and end points and 80 meters from the left and right of the centerline.</p> <p>b. Marked the pickets for night operations.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader verifies that the overwatching unit is in position to provide security to the emplacing unit or provides security with platoon personnel.</p> <p>* 7. The emplacement team leader performs a built-in test (BIT) and the element leader verifies the correct self-destruct time.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield warning (SCATMINWARN) 30 minutes before the emplacement time to higher HQ according to Field Manual 20-32.</p> <p>9. The element emplaces the minefield.</p> <p>a. Activated the dispenser control unit (DCU) to begin dispersing the Volcano mines at the start point.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the Volcano mines are being properly dispersed and that the driver maintains the set speed and line with the centerline markers until the vehicle reaches the end point.</p> <p>c. Ceased dispensing mines at the designated end point of the minefield.</p> <p>NOTE: The emplacement team must move away from the minefield within 4 minutes to avoid being in the fragment hazard zone during mine detonations that fail the arming sequence.</p> <p>*10. The element leader conducts obstacle turnover with the overwatching element.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield record (SCATMINREC) to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The element moves to a safe location and prepares for follow-on missions.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send information using text messaging, updating digital overlays with obstacle locations, and transmitting updated reports using the appropriate battle command system according to the unit TACSOP. Nondigital units transmit information to higher HQ by FM means according to the unit TACSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3137	Direct a Row Minefield Laying Party
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-3142	Direct the Operation of a Ground Volcano System
052-192-3165	Supervise the Installation of a Volcano Minefield
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Mark a Minefield (05-4-0110.05-R01A)
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (DA FORM 1355-1-R)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7) (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in a contemporary operating environment and receives the mission to mark a friendly obstacle being emplaced or already in place. Unit members determine the location of the obstacle from the emplacing party personnel, Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355, DA Form 1355-1-R, or a mine record and report. The logistical planning for obstacle marking is done. The unit has the necessary material to mark the minefield. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit marks the location of obstacle boundaries, gaps, and lanes to minimize the risk of loss of personnel or equipment caused by an unmarked obstacle. The unit marks all four sides of the minefield and other inherently dangerous obstacles behind the forward line of own troops (FLOT). The unit ensures that the minimum safe distance (MSD) from the mine is used and emplaces a scatterable minefield perimeter fence before the installation of the minefield. The digital units report the locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the digital operational overlay and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader organizes personnel and directs members to assemble all equipment and materials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized the unit into teams to drive pickets, string wire, post signs, and carry materials for uninterrupted marking. b. Positioned materials at intervals around the obstacle to minimize hauling requirements. Materials may have included wire (barbed or concertina), pickets, mine warning signs, a standard mine marking set, and an M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS). <p>NOTE: The unit marking standing operating procedure (SOP) should adhere to international standardization agreement (STANAG) 2036 and current field manuals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Ensured that teams carried wire gauntlets, wire cutters, sledgehammers, or an expedient picket-driving device to ensure smooth fence construction. <p>2. The unit marks the obstacle boundaries.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with locations to update the digital overlay, situational awareness (SA), and the COP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked conventional minefields. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The unit leader ensured that the perimeter fence was at least 15 meters outside of the nearest mine or cluster. (2) Installed one strand of wire waist-high or one row of concertina around the obstacle. <p>NOTE: Additional wire may be added at the commander's discretion.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Placed mine warning signs on the wire 10 to 15 meters apart. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Marked scatterable minefields. The unit leader ensured that the area inside the perimeter fence included a safety zone as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ground Volcano minefields. Installed pickets no closer than 80 meters from the centerline of the minefield and 40 meters from the start and end points. <p>NOTE: Fencing should be no closer than 20 meters from the nearest mine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Air Volcano minefields. Installed pickets no closer than 100 meters from the centerline of the minefield and 100 meters from the start and end points. <p>NOTE: Fencing is installed before emplacing the air Volcano minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Flipper minefields. Installed pickets no closer than 60 meters beyond the centerline of the two end strips and 20 meters from the start and end markers. (4) Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS). Installed pickets no closer than 55 meters from the front and 20 meters from the rear of the canister. (5) Area-denial artillery munition (ADAM), remote antiarmor mine (RAAM), and Gator minefields. These minefields were marked if the tactical situation permitted. <p>NOTE: These minefields are not usually marked before emplacement unless the tactical situation permits.</p> <p>c. Marked other hazardous obstacles. The unit leader determined the MSD through the risk management process.</p> <p>3. The unit marks safe lanes and gaps through the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the following guidance to mark safe lanes and gaps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Footpaths, 1 meter wide. (2) One-way vehicle traffic, 8 meters wide. (3) Two-way vehicle traffic, 16 meters wide. (4) Gaps, greater than 100 meters wide. b. Marked the safety lanes in forward areas, using rock piles and short wooden stakes so that lane locations were not exposed to the enemy. c. Marked the lanes in rear areas similar to boundaries and emplaced luminous marking devices (such as a HEMMS or a standard mine marking) visible only from the friendly side of the obstacle. <p>* 4. The unit leader reports mission completion to the next higher engineer headquarters or supported maneuver unit.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the COP to provide situational awareness (SA) to units operating in the area.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Six Engineer Squads

TASK: Emplace a Nuisance Minefield (05-4-0117)
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (STANAG 2036)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and is directed to emplace a nuisance minefield. The minefield location has been selected. A security team is provided. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The squad emplaces the minefield within the time prescribed for the mission. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The digital units report locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the digital operational overlay and common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects the minefield site and composition consistent with the maneuver commander's scheme.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submitted a report of intention to lay a minefield to higher headquarters (HQ). b. Selected the type of mines (antipersonnel [AP] [in Korea only], antitank [AT], or both) based on threat and ground conditions. c. Employed mines to block likely avenues of approach, enhance key weapon systems, and cover dead space. <p>NOTE: Once nuisance minefields are emplaced, they do not require cover by observation or direct fire. Nuisance minefields are usually irregular in size and shape. They can be a single group of mines or a series of mined areas. Good locations are avenues of approach, road craters, AT ditch berms, fords, bridge sites, and observation points overwatching other obstacles.</p> <p>2. The squad emplaces and arms mines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The element leader reported initiation to higher HQ by secure means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). b. The element leader selected a reference point on the friendly side of the minefield. c. Emplaced and recorded the location of the mines. The unit used trip wires, antihandling devices (AHDs), and/or booby traps. d. Emplaced minefields in an irregular size and shape. Conventional mines and/or scatterable mines could be used. Used a maximum number of AHDs. e. Fused and armed the mines, starting on the enemy side and working back to the friendly side. The laying/arming party personnel knew the exact location of each mine/booby trap. f. Saved and buried safety pins/clips at the reference point. g. Camouflaged mines using natural or other lightweight material. <p>3. The element leader submitted the following by secure means:</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the COP by using FM or digital means according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Status reports as required by the unit commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. A report of completion to higher HQ.		
c. A copy of DA Form 1355 to the parent unit.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2014	Direct the Utilization of United States (US) Antihandling Device (AHD) on Antitank Mines
052-192-3137	Direct a Row Minefield Laying Party
052-192-3142	Direct the Operation of a Ground Volcano System
052-192-3165	Supervise the Installation of a Volcano Minefield
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The element leader has selected and approved the location. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The crew constructs crew-served weapons fighting positions providing coverage for the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element constructs a machine gun position that has a primary and secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the unit to provide current SA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the front of the unit) with the oblique being the primary sector of fire. b. Constructed the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner. c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire. d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection, ensuring that it did not interfere with the sectors of fire. e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon. f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon. g. Reduced the height of the weapon by digging the tripod platform down, as much as possible, but kept the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire. <p>NOTE: Refer to the appropriate technical manual (TM) or field manual (FM) to ensure adherence to proper clearances.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Constructed a one-soldier supplemental fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Constructed the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>j. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</p> <p>l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>2. The element constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Constructed the position in a V shape with the firing position in the apex of the V.</p> <p>b. Constructed the position following the procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The element constructs a Javelin position and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. Cleared the backblast area of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p>NOTE: Caution should be used in the placement of the Javelin. The four caution areas for the backblast and possibilities for overpressure in the position are some concerns. The primary danger zone extends 25 meters to the rear at a 60-degree angle from the rear of the weapon. Not paying attention to these cautions could cause death or serious injury to personnel in danger areas.</p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the element built cover on the flanks</p> <p>c. Constructed the fighting position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>d. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the Javelin stood at the front of the position.</p> <p>f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</p> <p>g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.</p> <p>4. Prepared a range card and submitted it to the element leader.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-3065	Direct Construction of Field Fortifications

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-4-1371	Provide Terrain Analysis Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)
 (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions. * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures. * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked. * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers. * 5. The element reports the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP. b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions. c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter. d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas. e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force. f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks. 2. The element operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established communications with the guard commander. b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter. 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed preplanned positions. b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
 (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability. <p>NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms. g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational. <p>* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing. b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out. c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank). e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°. f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Element: personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
 (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Organized the element to defensive positions. c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ). <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Made the engagement decision. f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement. h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters. 2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters. 3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts. 4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position. 5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results. <table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion. d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed. e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ. g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader. h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms. i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors 	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ. f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ. g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP. * 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement. a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques. d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified aerial platforms. g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ. j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed. <p>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses. <p>* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements before all operations. <p>4. The element carries out safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-spot safety corrections. <p>NOTES: 1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge (05-3-0619)
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1249) (FM 3-34.343)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives the mission to construct a nonstandard fixed bridge capable of passing two-lane military load class (MLC) 20 tracked and wheeled traffic along a main supply or along the lines of the communication route. A reconnaissance has been completed and a bypass is considered difficult. A construction directive with plans and specifications is provided. The site has been selected. The enemy direct fire has been suppressed. Site security and internal communications have been established. The element has the required materials and construction equipment organic to the unit. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon and attachments construct a nonstandard fixed bridge ready to cross one-lane MLC 20 tracked or wheeled traffic no later than the time designated in the mission statement. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader plans the construction. NOTE: The digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to assist in the reconnaissance process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoitered the site to measure the gap length and depth, checked soil conditions, identified ingress and egress routes, and the location for materiel-storage areas b. Determined all materiel and transportation requirements based on the mission statement. c. Submitted requests for the required construction equipment, materiel, and transportation. d. Developed a construction schedule by estimating the time required to complete individual tasks and the total project. e. Issued the order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Demanded adherence to safety procedures in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the appropriate field manuals. (2) Outlined actions to take in the event of an enemy attack. <p>* 2. The platoon sergeant organizes work parties and the work site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized (as a minimum) the layout, substructure, superstructure, cutting, and materiel-issue crews (additional crews may be needed for special operations such as pile driving or welding). b. Designated a safety noncommissioned officer (NCO). c. Set up materiel-storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged them according to the tactical situation. d. Assigned layout tasks to squads. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Established the centerline and the baseline. (2) Located abutments and intermediate supports.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader manages the construction of the bridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored safety. b. Ensured that the centerline was established according to the plans. c. Verified the location of abutments and intermediate supports. d. Managed the construction schedule. e. Maintained construction notes. f. Approved changes to the original plans. g. Submitted progress reports according to the unit SOP. <p>* 4. The platoon sergeant supervises construction of the bridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored safety. b. Reallocated personnel and equipment as needed. c. Supervised construction crews and techniques. d. Ensured adherence to plans and specifications. e. Notified the element leader of changes to the original plans. f. Ensured quality control. <p>* 5. The platoon sergeant supervises site cleanup.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed debris removal. b. Prepared excess salvageable materials for return to the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). <p>* 6. The element leader or the platoon sergeant classifies the bridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the bridge. b. Prepared the bridge reconnaissance report showing the as-built condition. c. Classified the bridge. d. Ensured that bridge classification signs were posted at both ends of the bridge. <p>* 7. The element leader reports that the bridge is complete and ready for crossing traffic.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the site and send reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bridge Abutment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-0701)
 (FM 5-430-00-2) (FM 3-21.38) (FM 5-34)
 (FM 5-430-00-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating in a contemporary operating environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient LZ for helicopters and give the general location of the site. The LZ will be used by single UH-60 helicopters for about 3 days. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs an expedient LZ capable of supporting UH-60 and UH-1B helicopter operations within 3 hours. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures and coordinates with the company for additional tools and supplies.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader selects the site. NOTE: The approach or departure zone requires a surface ratio of 10:1. a. Conducted a map reconnaissance identifying the possible sites and ensured that the site— (1) Met the tactical requirements (2) Had slopes of less than 3 percent. b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance of possible sites and ensured that the site selected had— (1) A minimum number of trees. NOTE: The UH-60 or the UH-1B requires a 30.5- x 30.5-meter clear area. See appropriate field manuals (FMs). (2) No approach or departure obstructions. (3) Ground access.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader directs the site layout. a. Defined the boundaries of the LZ. b. Designated the approach and departure zone. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p> <p>4. The platoon clears the LZ and the glide path. a. Cleared obstructions from the glide path. b. Removed trees using pioneer tools or demolitions. c. Cleared brush from the LZ. d. Marked the LZ.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Marked the four corners with regulation panels that were 50 centimeters x 65 centimeters. (2) Marked obstructions; for example, wires and tree stumps nearest the LZ * 5. The element leader reports the mission progress and completion to higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: The digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location of the LZ according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges (05-3-0707)
 (FM 3-34.343) (DA FORM 1249) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a mission to reinforce and/or repair an existing bridge superstructure to allow for two-lane military load classification (MLC) 70 tracked or wheeled traffic along a combat route. A reconnaissance has been completed and a bypass is considered difficult. A method of reinforcement or repair has been selected. Enemy direct fire is suppressed and internal communications are established. Site security is provided. Required materials and equipment are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon reinforces or repairs an existing bridge in order to cross MLC 70 tracked and wheeled traffic no later than the time designated in the mission statement. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader plans the construction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoitered the site, evaluated the condition of the existing bridge, checked soil conditions, and located ingress and egress routes and material storage areas. b. Determined all material and transportation requirements based on the mission statement. c. Submitted requests for the required construction equipment, material, and transportation. d. Developed a construction schedule by estimating the task durations and total project duration. e. Issued the order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Demanded adherence to safety procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the appropriate references. (2) Outlined the reaction to an enemy attack. * 2. The platoon sergeant organizes work parties and the work site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized (as a minimum) the layout, substructure, superstructure, cutting, and material issue crews. b. Appointed a safety noncommissioned officer (NCO). c. Directed the removal of old bridge debris, if present. d. Set up camouflaged material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. e. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. f. Assigned layout tasks to squads. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established survey control (centerlines and baselines), as needed. (2) Located the position of new intermediate supports or abutments. * 3. The element leader manages the reinforcement and/or repair of the bridge. * 4. The platoon sergeant supervises the reinforcement and/or repair of the bridge. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The element leader or the platoon sergeant reclassifies the bridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the bridge. b. Prepared the bridge reconnaissance report showing the new condition of the bridge. c. Calculated the new bridge classification, if qualified. If unqualified, forwarded the information to the next engineer officer qualified to classify the bridge. d. Ensured that bridge classification signs were posted at both ends of the bridge. <p>* 6. The element leader reports to higher headquarters (HQ) when the bridge is complete and ready for traffic crossing.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and send text messages as necessary to clearly relay pertinent information affecting the mobility and classification of the bridge according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces (05-3-0785)
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)
 (FM 5-436)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) to place airfield matting on a prepared surface. The mission statement specifies the runway, taxiway, and apron dimensions and completion time. The surface area is prepared. Airfield membrane and matting is pre-positioned at the site. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element places airfield matting at a rate of 32.5 square meters per man-hour (for trained troops). The matting is certified for use. The digital units send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the element leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials. * 2. The element leader or element sergeant establishes jobsite security. * 3. The element leader inventories pre-positioned matting to ensure that adequate stocks are on hand. * 4. The element leader inspects the airfield surface to ensure that it has been properly prepared (leveled, no depressions, and minimum grade changes). The element repairs or requests assistance as appropriate. * 5. The element leader organizes the element and assigns specific tasks according to the appropriate field manual. 6. The element places membrane and airfield matting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Located and marked the centerline of the runway, taxiway, and apron. b. Placed the matting according to the appropriate field manual. c. The Army aviation safety officer or the Air Force combat control team certifies the matting for use. * 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). <p>NOTE: The digital units send reports using FM or digital systems. The unit populates the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0786	Replace Damaged Airfield Matting

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-1600)
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element requires logistical support for follow-on missions. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistical support is required in order to maintain combat effectiveness. The platoon receives the LOGPAC according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). Digital units send requests and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader/sergeant determines the need for combat service support (CSS) for an operation and initiates the request.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwarded the request to the company first sergeant (1SG), if not attached to a support unit. b. Forwarded the request to the supported maneuver unit 1SG, if attached, and provided a copy of the report to engineer higher headquarters (HQ). <p>NOTE: Digital units request CSS through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader/sergeant coordinates with the 1SG for the technique, time, and location of the LOGPAC.</p> <p>3. The element assists the 1SG with pickup and delivery of supplies when required.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader/sergeant supervises resupply operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized for resupply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moved the element tactically to the company resupply point, if delivered by the service station method. (2) Instructed the squad on the order of supply, if received by the tailgate method. b. Welcomed new personnel and assigned them to a squad, if received in the element. c. Transferred enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), if required. d. Ensured that all medical needs were met. e. Ensured that all vehicles; weapons; radios; and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) equipment were maintained. f. Ensured that requirements for all petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) were met. g. Ensured that all administration needs were met. h. Ensured that all mail was received. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Ensured that all classes of supply were received. j. Inspected each squad before they left the resupply point. * 5. The element leader ensures that security is maintained throughout the resupply operation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections
 Company

TASK: Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
 (FM 12-6) (FM 3-21.38)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. b. Identified casualty collection points. c. Identified transport requirements. d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element. g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel. h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP. <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.05-T01A for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Reported casualties. c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists. d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury. b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6. <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the litter teams. b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required. c. Secured the casualty on the litter. d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6. <p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6. b. Secured casualties in the vehicle. c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6. <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP. b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38. c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival. d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP. e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TACSOP, if required. <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6. b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew. c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP. e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP. <p>8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed MOPP4. b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP. c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location. d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport. <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)
 (FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support. * 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP. * 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation. * 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques. a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems. c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders. d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment. e. Conducted after-action debriefings. f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51. g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies. * 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques. a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element. 6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures. a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
 (AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat. b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures. d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD. e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies. f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP. h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP. 2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12. b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12. c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance. f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required. g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures. h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required. i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP. k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP. <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP. b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. c. Consumed only water designated as potable. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent. h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

5 - 238

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

NOTE: Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in MOPP4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a team leader. b. Issued guidance. * 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area. b. Identified additional support requirements. c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ. d. Identified the search pattern to be used. e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ. f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ. * 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures. b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags. c. Assigned the search area. d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance. e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ. f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP. 4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps. b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects. c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs. d. Collected all disassociated personal effects. e. Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established tentative identification. b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains. c. Attached personal effects to the remains. d. Shrouded the remains with available materials. e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site. f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site. 6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains. b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst. c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point. * 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the specific burial site. b. Supervised the marking of the grave site. c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects. 8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the grave site. b. Placed the remains in the grave. c. Marked all grave sites. d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

NOTE: An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the required supplies and equipment. b. Identified the drop zone (DZ). c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request. d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). * 2. The element commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer. b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4. c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans. e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment. f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4. g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans. 3. The company receives supplies and equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured the DZ or AO. b. Derigged supplies and equipment. c. Recorded shortages. d. Identified the damaged items. e. Evacuated supplies and equipment. f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4.		
j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Six Engineer Squads

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element searches the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken. 2. The element segregates the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels. 3. The element silences the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline. 4. The element safeguards the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely. 5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property. 6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission. b. Determined the availability of organic resources. c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element. b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit. c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete. d. Included the following information in the request: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Type of relationship (command or support). (2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed. (3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission. (4) Mission of the battalion. (5) Mission of the augmentation support element. 3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element. b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance. 4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company. 5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements. a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the element to maintain high morale. 6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support. a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ. Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
 Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)
 (FM 3-11) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 34-45)
 (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, an element is conducting combat operations. All communications systems are on hand and functional. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, the appropriate field manual, or the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit SOP or the situation. NOTE: Digital units send reports through alert messaging using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE). b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ. NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, damage, and angle of the fall or descent, as the time and the conditions permit. a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation. b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).</p> <p>3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022. b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4. c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro-optics - 5. d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency. e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications). f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates. <p>* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The information included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The line of departure (LD) crossing. b. The checkpoint arrival times. c. The rally point (RP) arrival time. d. The logistics report. e. The intelligence report. <p>* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by the unit SOP. The report included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The designation of the patrol. b. The date. c. The unit receiving the report. d. The name of the person submitting the report. e. The size and composition of the patrol. f. The mission. g. The departure and return times. h. The routes out and back. i. A terrain description, including the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky. (2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws. (3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges. (4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles. j. Data on the enemy, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The strength. (2) The disposition. (3) The condition of the defense. (4) The equipment and weapons. (5) The morale of the personnel. (6) The exact location. (7) A shift in disposition. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(8) The time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</p> <p>k. Any map corrections.</p> <p>l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warfare.</p> <p>m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, including—</p> <p>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</p> <p>(2) The identification of enemy personnel.</p> <p>(3) Enemy casualties.</p> <p>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</p> <p>n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded.</p> <p>o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics.</p> <p>p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader.</p> <p>q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the signature of the interrogator.</p> <p>* 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report.</p> <p>a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ.</p> <p>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).</p> <p>* 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report.</p> <p>a. Submitted the report to the unit HQ.</p> <p>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.</p> <p>8. The leaders submit a generic report.</p> <p>NOTE: General reports are considered to be any report not covered in the outline above.</p> <p>a. Submitted reports according to the unit SOPs.</p> <p>b. Sent reports in the correct formats.</p> <p>c. Reported information to the appropriate levels by the fastest means possible.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-1383	Disseminate Terrain Information (Products)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is performing tactical operations in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format. NOTE: Digital units write and disseminate the OPORD using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), perform collaborative planning, and submit orders/requests and reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments. b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why. c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the intent of the commander, the subordinate unit instructions, and coordinating instructions. <p>NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) and unit support instructions. If the paragraph was too long, used an annex. Otherwise, used the following paragraph sample format: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Material and services. (2) Medical. (3) Personnel. (4) Civil military. (5) As necessary. e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and FM). <p>* 2. The element leader ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-third rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element (05-3-0300)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-71-100) (FM 5-71-2)
 (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The task force (TF) is in a contemporary operating environment. Engineer elements have been received from higher headquarters (HQ) to support TF operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Engineer elements must be integrated into the TF scheme of maneuver according to the commander's intent and must synchronize the engineer effort in conjunction with other battlefield operating systems (BOS). The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The TF engineer advises the TF commander on the use of engineer assets. NOTE: The digital units use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to perform collaborative planning, send orders and reports, and update digital overlays.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed mission analysis and recommended the task organization. b. Recommended the command and support relationship. c. Sent the warning order (WO) to subordinate units. d. Participated in the staff orders process, ensuring that the engineers were integrated into the process for fire support (FS), reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S), and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). e. Briefed subordinate leaders on the scheme of maneuver and the commander's intent. f. Monitored engineer activities and made recommendations, as necessary. <p>* 2. The leaders prepare the units for movement and linkup operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). b. Reviewed drills and orders. c. Participated in combined arms reconnaissance planning. d. Conducted linkup operations and received the operation order (OPORD) briefing. e. Participated in combined arms rehearsals. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company)
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018)
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-90.1)
 (FM 5-422) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD) to perform operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to perform a map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO, or an OPORD from its higher headquarters (HQ). He determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign. NOTE: Digital units send and receive orders using the ABCS or FM means according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to subordinate leaders. a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation). b. Identified the task organization. c. Stated the time of the operation. d. Provided any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Stated the element timeline.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. a. Developed the plan based on METT-TC factors. b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process. c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation. d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured the equipment based on the mission, to include checking rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</p> <p>4. The element continues assembly area activities and security.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</p> <p>b. Performed personal hygiene.</p> <p>c. Resupplied equipment and materials, to include small arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and refueling of vehicles.</p> <p>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</p> <p>e. Performed weapon test firing.</p> <p>f. Ate.</p> <p>g. Rested.</p> <p>h. Maintained security.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. NOTE: Subordinate leaders move the element in the absence of the element leader. This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader performs a reconnaissance. NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and DTSS products from higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Performed a map reconnaissance, as a minimum, along with subordinate leaders when practical.</p> <p>b. Performed a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical. (2) Identified the critical areas of the mission. (3) Moved as far forward as the time and situation permitted.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan.</p> <p>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available equipment, personnel, and material.</p> <p>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or OPORD format, to subordinate and attached leaders. The order contained the following information and could be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <p>a. SITUATION. (1) Enemy forces. (2) Friendly forces. (3) Attachments and detachments.</p> <p>b. MISSION.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION. (1) Concept of the operation. (a) Scheme of maneuver. (b) Fires. (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance. (d) Intelligence. (e) Engineer support. (f) Air defense. (g) Information operations. (2) Subunit tasks. (3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum, the element leader must address the— (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective. (b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR). (c) Risk reduction control measures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The element leader determines the risk reduction control measures by using the five steps of the risk management process, referring to Field Manual (FM) 101-5 for additional information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Rules of engagement. (e) Environmental considerations. (f) Force protection. <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Support concept. (2) Materials and services. (3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (4) Personnel. (5) Civil military. <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) The location of the element leadership, support element leadership, and command posts for the operation. (b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element SOP or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]). (2) Signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect. (b) Radio communication restrictions. (c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals. (d) Code words and reports specific to the operation. (e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures. <p>* 9. Subordinate leaders complete the PCCs, and element leaders perform the PCIs.</p> <p>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can perform the PCCs on receipt of a WO or FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked and inventoried equipment, ensured that the items were serviceable and that the element had the items specified in the unit SOP and the items required for specific mission. b. Ensured that adequate resupply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines were available. c. Performed a communications check. d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that weapons were test fired. e. Ensured that personnel understood their task and purpose and that of the element headquarters. f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission. <p>*10. Leaders perform at least one type of rehearsal.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Plan and Control Indirect Fire (05-3-1239)
 (FM 6-30)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment supporting a maneuver task force (TF) and receives a mobility or countermobility mission. Indirect fire is available through the maneuver TF. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon leader prepares a target list and calls for indirect fire to suppress or destroy the enemy. The platoon leader adjusts fire within 2 minutes. The digital units send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader analyzes the assigned mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a map reconnaissance from the unit equipment to identify mobility or countermobility mission locations. b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance with the supported unit commander and the fire support team (FIST). c. Identified mission locations and indirect-fire targets (8-digit grid coordinates). * 2. The element leader coordinates with the FIST. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested survey teams through the TF fire support officer (FSO) to survey mission locations. b. Assigned target numbers for each mobility or countermobility mission location to facilitate indirect-fire missions. * 3. The element leader coordinates with the FSO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the target numbers were listed on the TF target list. b. Planned the employment of artillery-delivered scatterable minefields as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plotted the proposed minefield centerline and the right and left boundaries with 8-digit grid coordinates. (2) Selected the following mines: remote antiarmor mine (RAAM) for armored vehicles or area denial artillery munition (ADAM) for dismounted troops. (3) Selected the minefield density for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Harassment: RAAM - 0.001, ADAM - 0.005. (b) Minefields covered by heavy direct fire: RAAM - 0.002, ADAM - 0.001. (c) Minefields covered by light direct fire: RAAM - 0.004, ADAM - 0.002. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The element leader calls for and controls indirect fire through the fire direction center (FDC).</p> <p>a. Determined the method of target location as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Polar plot. The FDC knows the location of the observer. (2) Grid coordinates. The FDC does not know the location of the observer, but the observer can locate the target to within 100 meters on a map. (3) Shift from a known point. Both the observer and FDC know one or more easily identifiable points. <p>b. Transmitted a fire mission request through the FDC in three parts as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Observer identification and warning order. (2) Target location. (3) Target description: the method of engagement, the method of fire and control, and adjustment procedures based on the target location method. <p>5. The element uses indirect fire until the enemy is suppressed or destroyed.</p> <p>NOTE: The digital units send requests for fires through FM means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System, using the combat short-form message request according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured radios in the mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks 2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS). 3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional. 4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for max signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports. 5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters
 Six Engineer Squads
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters
 Obstacle Section
 Two Assault Sections

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly. <p>WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only). c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed. <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site. b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline. c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment. d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference. <p>3. Net members perform permission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed before-operation PMCS b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only). d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13. <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs permission checks for the SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</p> <p>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</p> <p>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</p> <p>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</p> <p>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</p> <p>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required.</p> <p>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <p>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</p> <p>b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions.</p> <p>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</p> <p>d. Opened the net.</p> <p>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members.</p> <p>f. Repeated the cold start.</p> <p>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>6. Net members enter the net.</p> <p>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</p> <p>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</p> <p>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <p>a. Performed premission checks for an FH cold start.</p> <p>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>c. Initiated the cue call.</p> <p>d. Reported into the net.</p> <p>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</p> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <p>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</p> <p>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</p> <p>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</p> <p>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</p> <p>e. Operated on a random schedule.</p> <p>f. Adhered to net discipline.</p> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <p>a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting.</p> <p>NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</p> <p>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</p> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <p>a. Continued to operate.</p> <p>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.</p> <p>c. Reduced the transmission speed.</p> <p>d. Increased the transmitter power.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Relocated the antenna. f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station. a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability. b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method. c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</p> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site. a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas. b. Performed preoperational PMCS. c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D. e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. Cued the LNE using radio D. h. Stored the ERF into both radios. i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID. j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.</p> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call. a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required. b. Switched to NRI MAN channel. c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel. d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</p> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINGGARS radio net. a. Performed PMCS, as required. b. Performed fault isolation, as required. c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required. d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required. e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record. f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</p> <p>15. The NCS closes the net. a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Acknowledged the net members. c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

*** indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
Module 1			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
Module 2			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

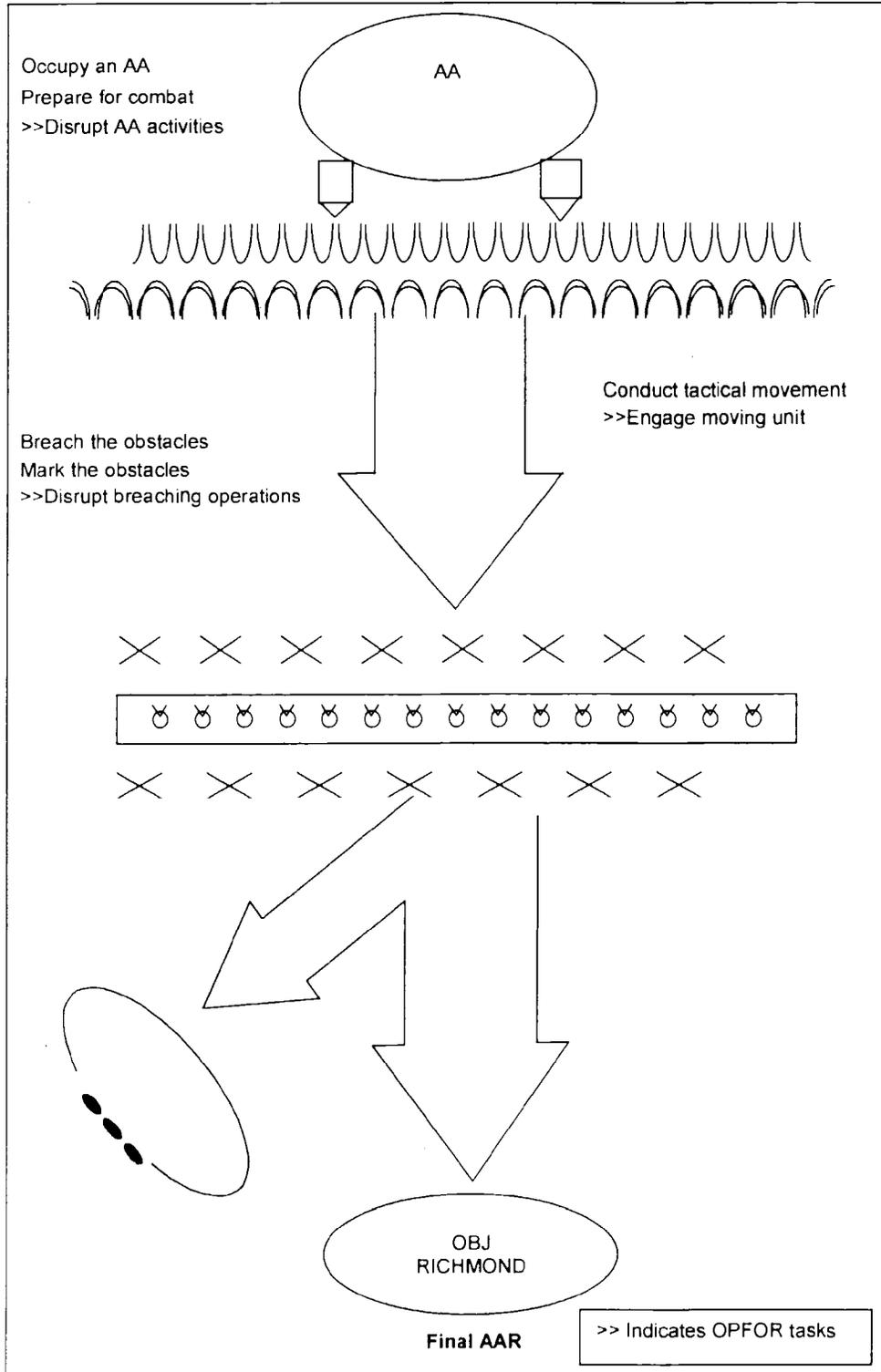


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration

c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. The following are minimum rank and experience requirements for O/Cs:

- The company O/C will be an officer with company command experience.
- Platoon or section O/Cs will be a lieutenant or an NCO with platoon or section experience.
- The recorder will be an officer or an NCO at the evaluation control HQ who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the O/Cs.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports the force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense common task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of specific duties and responsibilities and on building a spirit of teamwork. The O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR STX 5-2-E0001			
Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.			

- A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.
- A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

- The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
- Safety procedures.
- Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
- AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation. This includes war-gaming all items of the master events list in order of occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

a. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. They issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control the OPFOR.

b. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

Step 1. Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation-plan tasks.

Step 2. Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation-plan task.

Step 3. Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

Step 4. Record the overall unit capability to perform the task by using the GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

- **GO.** The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.
- **NO-GO.** The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Use other locally produced reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the final overall unit rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. Unit designation:				Date:		
2. Unit leaders (circle the most correct answer):						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Platoon Leader	2LT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Platoon Sergeant	SFC/SSG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
1 st Squad Leader	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
2 nd Squad Leader	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3 rd Squad Leader	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
		1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
		1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
		1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
		1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
		1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller signature: _____						

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
Exercise number and description:
Date and time the exercise started:
Date and time the exercise ended:
<p>1. <u>Weather conditions</u> (circle the appropriate description):</p> <p>Clear Partly Cloudy Hazy Rain Snow Fog Cloudy</p> <p>Other:</p> <p>Temperature:</p>
<p>2. <u>Ground conditions</u> (circle the appropriate description):</p> <p>Dry Wet Ice Snow</p> <p>Other:</p>
<p>3. <u>Light conditions</u> (circle the appropriate description):</p> <p>Day Night</p> <p>Moon phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full</p> <p>Average range of visibility due to light:</p>
<p>4. <u>Terrain</u> (circle the appropriate description):</p> <p>Flat Rolling Mountains Jungle Desert Urban Arctic</p> <p>Other:</p> <p>Top soil: Sandy Rocky Clay Other:</p> <p>Average range of visibility due to terrain:</p>
<p>5. <u>Remarks:</u></p>

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is initiated in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) **Conduct.** AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques but professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation should be present for the AAR. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TCs) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

OPERATION ORDER	
(classification)	
FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20 _____	Copy ___ of ___ copies
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond and then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. The 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two task forces (TFs), with one TF following as the brigade reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.</p>	

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD

- (3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical check points and identified obstacles shown on the obstacles overlay.
- b. Subunit missions, as required.
- c. Engineer. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.
- d. Coordinating instructions.
 - (1) Report all enemy contact.
 - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
 - (3) Report the crossing of PLs.
 - (4) Additional information, as required.
- 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the division SOP.
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
 - a. Command.
 - b. Signal.
 - (1) Current signal operation signal operation instructions (SOI).
 - (2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact with the enemy.

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US, the former Soviet republics, or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (such as mortars, howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

B-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

B-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	Multiplied By	Equals US Units
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

- 1LT**
first lieutenant
- 1SG**
first sergeant
- 2LT**
second lieutenant
- 5 Ss and T**
search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
- AA**
avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly
- AAR**
after-action review; after-action report
- ABCS**
Army Battle Command System
- AC**
active component; alternating current
- ACE**
ammunition, casualties, and equipment; air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmover (M9)
- ADA**
air defense artillery
- ADAM**
area denial artillery munition
- AHD**
antihandling device
- AN/PSS-12**
hand-held, portable mine-detecting set
- AO**
area of operations
- AOR**
area of responsibility
- AP**
antipersonnel
- APC**
armored personnel carrier
- APOBS**

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

Antipersonnel Obstacle-Breaching System

AR

Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

ARTEP

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ASAS

All-Source Analysis System

AT

antiterrorism; antitank

ATGM

antitank guided missile

ATTN

attention

ATWESS

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

AVLB

armored-vehicle-launched bridge

bangalore torpedo

A metal tube containing explosives and a firing mechanism. It is used to breach barbed wire obstacles and detonate land mines.

B-EFV

Bradley engineer fighting vehicle

berm

A uniform soil embankment.

BF

battle fatigue; board feet

BFV

Bradley fighting vehicle

BIT

built-in test

bn

battalion

BOM

bill of materials

BOMREP

bombing report

BOS

battlefield operating system

Glossary - 2

- BP**
battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)
- C2**
command and control
- C4**
composition C4; military plastic explosive
- CAS**
casualty; close air support
- CATS**
combined arms training strategy
- CCD**
command and control data
- CCIR**
commander's critical-information requirement
- CCT**
combat-control team
- CDM**
chemical downwind message
- CFZ**
critical friendly zone
- CHS**
combat health support
- Class V**
Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.
- COA**
course of action
- COMSEC**
communications security
- CONEX**
container express
- COP**
common operational picture
- CP**
command post; checkpoint
- CS**
combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

CSS

combat service support

DA

Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

DCU

dispenser control unit; digital-control unit

DD

Department of Defense

Defense Mapping Agency (DMA)

The Department of the Defense agency responsible for worldwide mapping and topographic sciences for military use.

defilade

A fighting position offering cover and concealment to its occupant.

DEUCE

deployable universal combat earthmover

DMA

Defense Mapping Agency

DODIC

Department of Defense identification code

DRS

direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

DTSS

Digital Topographic Support System

DZ

drop zone

DZST

drop zone support team

EA

each; engagement area

EBA

engineer battlefield assessment

ECCM

electronic countercountermeasures

EEFI

essential elements of friendly information

EM

electronic media; engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member

EN

Glossary - 4

engineer (unit designations; graphics)

ENDEX

end of exercise

EOD

explosive ordnance disposal

EPW

enemy prisoner of war

ERF

electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill

EW

electronic warfare

FBCB2

Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

FDC

fire direction center

FH

field hospital; frequency hopping

final protection fires (FPF)

An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

FIST

fire support team

Flipper

The M38 Flipper is a manual mine dispenser that is designed to emplace M74 AP and M75 AT mines. It is a simple dispensing system and uses little automation to load and dispense mines.

FLOT

forward line of own troops

FM

field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

FO

forward observer

ford

A shallow part in a body of water where the bottom permits the passage of personnel or vehicles.

FPF

final protective fire; final protection fires

FPL

final protective line

FRAGO

fragmentary order

FRAGO (fragmentary order)

An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

FS

fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

FSO

fire support officer; food service officer

FSOP

field standard operating procedure

FST

field sanitation team; fire support team

FTX

field training exercise

GATOR

An air-delivered SCATMINE System. The Gator has a longer range than any other SCATMINE system. It provides a means to rapidly emplace minefields anywhere that can be reached by tactical aircraft. The Gator is produced in two versions--the United States Air Force (USAF) CBU-89/B system that contains 94 mines (72 AT and 22 AP) per dispenser and the United States Navy (USN) CBU-78/B system that contains 60 mines (45 AT and 15 AP) per dispenser.

GRREG

graves registration

GTA

graphic training aid

HAB

heavy assault bridge

HE

high explosive

HEAT

high-explosive antitank

HEMMS

hand-emplaced minefield marking set

HMEE

high-mobility engineer excavator

HQ

headquarters

hull defilade

Artificial or natural obstacle from enemy fire.

ICOM

imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

INTSUM

intelligence summary

IOE

irregular outer edge

IPB

intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

IR

infrared; intelligence requirements

ITR

independent tank regiment

KIA

killed in action

LCE

load-carrying equipment

LD

line of departure

LNE

late net entry

LOGPAC

logistics package; logistical package

LZ

landing zone

MACOM

major army command

MANSCEN

maneuver support center

MBT

main battle tank

MCB

mine-clearing blade

MCR

mine-clearing roller

MCS

Maneuver Control System

MDI

modernized demolition initiator

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

MDMP

military decision-making process

mech

mechanized

METL

mission-essential task list

METT-TC

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MHE

materials-handling equipment

MICLIC

mine clearing line charge

MIJI

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

MILES

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

MLC

military load classification; military load class

mm

millimeter(s)

MO

Missouri

MOPMS

Modular-Pack Mine System

MOPMS (modular-pack mine system)

Scatterable mine system with antitank or antipersonnel mines. A mix minefield is obtained by overlapping patterns of each type.

MOPP

mission-oriented protective posture

MOPP2

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

MOPP4

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

MORTREP

mortar bombing report

MOS

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

Glossary - 8

- MP**
military police
- MSD**
minimum safe distance
- MSR**
main supply route
- MSRT**
mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal
- MTF**
medical-treatment facility
- MTOE**
modified table(s) of organization and equipment; modification table of organization and equipment
- MTP**
mission training plan; MOS training plan
- NATO**
North Atlantic Treaty Organization
- NBC**
nuclear, biological, and chemical
- NBC 1 Report**
Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).
- NBC 4 Report**
Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.
- NBC 5 Report**
Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.
- NCI**
net control interface
- NCO**
noncommissioned officer
- NCOIC**
noncommissioned officer in charge
- NCS**
net control station
- non-ICOM**
nonintegrated communications security

NRI
net radio interface

NVD
night vision device

O/C
observer/controller

OBJ
objective

OBSTINTEL
obstacle intelligence

OCOKA
observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenue of approach

OEG
operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

OP
observation post; operational procedure

OPCON
operational control

OPFOR
opposing forces

OPLAN
operation plan

OPORD
operation order

OPORD (operation order)
A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

OPSEC
operations security

ORP
objective rally point

P
needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

pam
pamphlet

parapet
A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

- PCC**
precombat check
- PCI**
photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection
- PDDE**
power-driven decontamination equipment
- PDF**
principal direction of fire
- PIR**
priority intelligence requirements
- PL**
phase line; plastic limit; Poland
- PMCS**
preventive-maintenance checks and services
- POL**
petroleum, oils, and lubricants
- POS/NAV**
position/navigation
- PSG**
platoon sergeant
- PVNTMED**
preventive medicine
- R&S**
reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance
- RAAM**
remote antiarmor mine
- radiac**
radiation, detection, indication, and computation
- RATELO**
radiotelephone operator
- RC**
rapid cure; reserve component
- RCU**
remote control unit
- release point**
A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

RES
radiation exposure status

RFL
restrictive fire line

ROE
rules of engagement

ROI
rules of interaction

ROKUS
Republic of Korea, United States

RP
Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus

RTD
return to duty

RXMT
retransmit

S1
Adjutant (US Army)

S2
Intelligence Officer (US Army)

S3
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

S4
Supply Officer (US Army)

SA
semiannually; situational awareness

sabot
A lightweight carrier in which a subcaliber projectile is centered to permit firing the projectile in a larger caliber weapon. The carrier fills the bore of the weapon from which the projectile is fired; it is normally discarded a short distance from the muzzle.

SALUTE
size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

SATRAN
satellite transmission

SATS
Standard Army Training System

SAW
squad automatic weapon

SBF
support by fire

SCATMINE
scatterable mine

SCATMINREC
scatterable-minefield record

SCATMINWARN
scatterable-minefield warning

SCPE
simplified collective-protection equipment

SEE
small-emplacement excavator

SF
standard form

SFC
special forces command; sergeant first class

SGT
sergeant

SHELREP
shelling report

SHTU
simplified handheld terminal unit

SIG
signal

SINCGARS
Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

SITMAP
situation map

SITREP
situation report

situation report (SITREP)
A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

SOFA
Status of Forces Agreement

SOI
signal operation instructions

SOP

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

standing operating procedure

SOP (standing operating procedure)

A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

SP

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

SPOTREP

spot report

SSG

staff sergeant

SSI

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

STANAG

standardization agreement

STB

supertropical bleach

STP

soldier training publication

STRAC

Standards in Training Commission

STX

situational training exercise

T

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

T&EO

training and evaluation outline

TACSOP

tactical standing operating procedure

TAI

targeted area of interest; tactical area of interest

TC

technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

TEK

traffic encryption key

TEWT

tactical exercise without troops

Glossary - 14

TF	task force; total float
TM	team; technical manual; trademark
TNT	trinitrotoluene
TOC	tactical operations center
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point; traffic regulation plan
TSEC	transmission security
TSK	transmission security key
turret defilade	A fighting position, usually for a tank, which allows the entire tank cover and concealment.
U	unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UH-1B	Utility Helicopter - 1 B (identifies modification version) (Huey)
UH-60	Utility Helicopter - 60 (Blackhawk)
UMCP	unit maintenance collection point
UPW	unit proficiency work sheet
US	United States
USMC	United States Marine Corps
USMTF	United States message text format

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

UXO

unexploded ordnance

Volcano

A multiple-delivery mine system dispensed from the air or on the ground.

wadi

gully, ravine

WAM

wide-area munition; wide area mine

WCS

weapon control status; weapon control station

WIA

wounded in action

WLGH

weapon-launched grappling hook

WO

warrant officer; warning order

XO

executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record. 1 March 1987
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record. 1 September 2001
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974
DA FORM 2203-R	Demolition Reconnaissance Record. 1 June 1998

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 1348	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Manual). 1 July 1991
DD FORM 1348M	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Mechanical). 1 March 1974
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996

Field Manuals

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 17-95	Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000

FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOL." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-20.98	Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002
FM 3-21.38	Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-34.343	Military Nonstandard Fixed Bridging. 12 February 2002
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Countertermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998

FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-422	Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 6-30	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire. 16 July 1991
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-85	Ranger Unit Operations 9 June 1987
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
Graphic Training Aids	
GTA 05-02-014	How to Order a Map. 1 February 2001
Other Product Types	
SF 344	Multiuse Standard Requisitioning/Issue System Document. January 1972.
STANAG 2036	Land Mine Laying, Marking, Recording and Reporting Procedures. 28 January 1999
STANAG 2123	Obstacle Folder. 30 November 1984
TRADOC PAM 11-9	Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990
Soldier Training Publications	
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986
Technical Manuals	
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970

TM 9-1300-214 Military Explosives. 20 September 1984

TM 9-1345-209-10 Operator's Manual for Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Consisting of Dispenser and Mine, Ground: M131 Control, Remote, Land Mine System: M71 and Dispenser and Mine, Ground, Training: M136. 31 March 1992

TM 9-1375-213-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Demolition Materials. 30 March 1973

Training Circulars

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

TC 25-20 A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993

TC 25-6 Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-335-DRILL Engineer Drills. 11 January 2001

ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (Mech), Battalion Staff. 25 June 1999

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 25 June 1999

ARTEP 5-437-35-MTP Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 25 June 1999

Field Manuals

FM 3-21.38 Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002

FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999

FM 5-430-00-1 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____

DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____
3. How long have you served in this unit? _____
4. What is your component?
 - a. Active component
 - b. Reserve component
5. Where is your unit?
 - a. Continental United States (CONUS)
 - b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
 - c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
 - d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
 - e. Other (specify)

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?
 - a. Has made training worse
 - b. Has made training better
 - c. Has had no affect on training
 - d. Do not know or do not have an opinion
7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?
 - a. Harder
 - b. Easier
 - c. About the same
 - d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

Questionnaire - 1

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
- c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
- d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

- a. Have too many pages
- b. Are hard to read and understand
- c. Need more illustrations
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
- e. Need more information on leader training
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
- g. Need more information on support and resources
- h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

- a. Have too many pages
- b. Are hard to read and understand
- c. Need more illustrations
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
- e. Need more information on leader training
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
- g. Need more information on support and resources
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

- a. Leave it out altogether
- b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
- c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
- d. Make standards less detailed
- e. Make standards more detailed
- f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
- g. Do not change; chapter is fine
- h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

- a. Leave it out altogether
- b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
- c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
- d. Make standards less detailed
- e. Make standards more detailed
- f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
- g. Do not change; chapter is fine
- h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

19. Additional comments:

**ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP
23 SEPTEMBER 2003**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
*Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army*
0325603

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.

PIN: 080913-000